



# Blueprint

For Teaching and Learning in

# Music



Grades PreK - 12

## First Edition (2004) Contributors

### Music Curriculum Development Co-Chairs

**Nancy Shankman**, *Director of Music/  
Deputy Senior Instructional Manager for Arts Education*

**Thomas Cabaniss**, *Director of Education,  
New York Philharmonic*

### Music Educators, New York City Department of Education

Jonathan Dzik

Roberta Feldhusen

Douglas Harris

Jeannie Kim

Martin Kirschenbaum

David LaMorte

Barbara Murray

### Music Organization Representatives

Dianne Berkun, *Brooklyn Youth Chorus*

John Bertles, *Brooklyn Philharmonic*

Mark Caruso, *Metropolitan Opera Association*

David Dik, *Metropolitan Opera Guild*

Aaron Flagg, *The Juilliard School*

Lisa Halasz, *Carnegie hall*

Laura Johnson, *Jazz at Lincoln Center*

Francisco J. Nuñez, *Young People's Chorus*

Sara Lise Raff, *Education Through Music*

Theodore Wiprud, *Brooklyn Philharmonic*

### Music Advisory Group

Dr. David Elliott, *New York University*

Dr. Jerrold Ross, *St. John's University*

### Music Reviewers

Music Educators Association of New York

## Second Edition (2008) Contributors

### Music Curriculum Development Co-Chairs

**Barbara Murray**, *Director of Music Programs  
Office of the Arts and Special Projects,  
New York City Department of Education*

**Shellie Bransford**, *Music Consultant*

**Elizabeth Norman**, *Director of Education,  
St. Luke's Orchestra*

**Gregory Pierson**, *Director of Education,  
Brooklyn Philharmonic*

### Department of Education Contributors

Donald Christiansen

Roberta Feldhusen

Janet Grice

Elizabeth Guglielmo

Jaime Jacobs

Maria Schwab

Thomas Toriello

George Wanat

Moishe Weidenfeld

### Cultural and University Community

Dr. Victor Bobetsky, *Hunter College*

Shellie Bransford, *Consultant*

Mark Caruso, *Orchestra of St. Luke*

Jerome Korman, *Musical Director, National Dance  
Institute; Program Director, Planet Arts*

Elizabeth Norman, *Orchestra of St. Luke*

Gregory Pierson, *Brooklyn Philharmonic*

Nancy Shankman, *New York University*

Elise Sobol, *New York University*

Theodore Wiprud, *New York Philharmonic*

### Reviewers

Dr. Victor Bobetsky, *Hunter College*

Joan Finkelstein, *New York City DOE*

Patricia Glunt, *New York City DOE*

Janet Grice, *New York City DOE*

Barbara Gurr, *New York City DOE*

Sarah Johnson, *Carnegie-Weill Institute*

Paul King, *New York City DOE*

Laurie Lock, *VH1 Save The Music*

Dr. Sherrie Maricle, *The New York Pops*

Karen Rosner, *New York City DOE*

Maria Schwab, *New York City DOE*

Barry Stern, *New York City DOE*

Theodore Wiprud, *New York Philharmonic*

### Music from the Inside Out Contributors

Jerome Korman, *Project Director, Music Consultant,  
Office of the Arts and Special Projects*

Nancy Shankman, *Director of Music, Deputy Senior  
Instructional Manager*

John Schaefer, *WNYC*

William Bassell, *Principal, Long Island City High School*

Barbara Murray, *Assistant Principal, Bryant High School*

William Rodriguez, *Principal, Celia Cruz High School of Music*

Leonard Treretola, *Principal,  
International Arts and Business High School*

David LaMorte, *Assistant Principal, Tottenville High School*

Patricia Glunt, *Assistant Principal,  
Long Island City High School*

Dr. Jonathan Dzik, *Music Educator,  
Christopher Columbus High School (Ret.)*

Martin Kirschenbaum, *Music Consultant,  
Office of the Arts and Special Projects*

Dr. Nicholas A. Aiello, *Former Director,  
Office of Instructional Publications*

Christopher Sgarro, *Director,  
Office of Instructional Publication*

Kim Parker, *Graphic Designer,  
Office of Instructional Publications*

Barbara Gurr, *Director of Visual Arts,  
Office of the Arts and Special Projects*

Gary Fogel, *Music Educator,  
Fiorello H. LaGuardia High School*

Laura Johnson, *Vice President of Education,  
Jazz at Lincoln Center*

Tom Van Buren, *Center for Traditional Music and Dance*  
Melanie Fallon-Houska, *Program Director, Bertelsmann  
Foundation, World of Expression Scholarship Program*

Joanne Bernstein-Cohen, *Executive Director,  
Young Audiences New York*

*Music From the Inside Out* was prepared for publication  
by the Office of Instructional Publications. Judy Goldberg  
was contributing writer, researcher and project editor.  
Pam Pollack designed the book and cover.

## Letter from the Chancellor

**Joel I. Klein**, *Chancellor*  
New York City Department of Education

**T**he publication of the *Blueprint for Teaching and Learning in the Arts* defines a course of excellence in arts education that begins in early childhood and follows students up through the grades to a commencement level of achievement in art, music, dance, and theater.

The *Blueprint* provides a standards-based rigorous approach to teaching the arts. It gives New York City's students the opportunity to delve deeply into these subjects, while giving their teachers the latitude to create an instructional program that demonstrates student learning over time and in varied dimensions.

More importantly, the sequential study of art, music, dance, and theater will help students achieve both a vocation and an avocation. Their ongoing work will enable them to apply for advanced study or for jobs in the arts-related industries that are so important to the economy of New York City. It will also provide them with a source of lifelong enjoyment as they become the future audience for the arts.

The *Blueprint* is a result of an exceptional collaboration between educators from the school system and representatives from the arts and cultural community of New York City. It motivates students to go beyond the walls of the classroom and encourages them to take advantage of the rich resources available across New York City in museums, concert venues, galleries, performance spaces, and theaters.

We are delighted to introduce the New York City schools to this powerful way of teaching and learning in the arts, and look forward to a future filled with artists, designers, musicians, dancers, actors, directors, and more—all New York City public school graduates.



## Acknowledgments

We are pleased to present this second edition of the *Blueprint for Teaching and Learning in Music*, which originally appeared in 2004 as a combined volume of music and visual arts. Both the first and second editions emanate from the groundbreaking framework created by Nancy Shankman and Tom Cabaniss. We are grateful to them for their vision and tenacity on behalf of music education in New York City's public schools.

This revised edition is enhanced by the addition of *Music from the Inside Out: A Resource Guide for Music Teachers* as a supplemental resource. By combining this rich instructional resource with the *Blueprint for Music*, we are providing a comprehensive tool for identifying, structuring, and implementing the components of rigorous music study.

Another added feature of this edition is the inclusion of completed study guides called Wraparounds for each benchmark grade. Other newly added sections address students with special needs, English Language Learners, and older beginning students. A glossary of music terms; a guide to *Blueprint* language and terminology; a description of classroom space, supply, and equipment requirements; an annotated bibliography and Webography; and an overview of planning and assessment complete the additions to this expanded *Music Blueprint*. Most importantly, this second edition, like the original document, reflects the continuing commitment of the New York City Department of Education to provide an excellent education for all public school students.

We extend our deepest gratitude to all who have contributed to this effort and have worked to make this document both rigorous and practical. First, our heartfelt thanks to Dr. Sharon Dunn, Senior Instructional Manager for Arts Education, for her strong support, leadership, and guidance. We are especially thankful for the work of our Co-Chairs, Shellie Bransford and Elizabeth Norman, whose exceptional commitment of time, skilled leadership, and dedication to this project contributed greatly to its successful outcome. We are also deeply grateful to *Blueprint* second-edition writers Mark Caruso, Janet Grice, Elizabeth Guglielmo, and Gregory Pierson for their most generous


contribution of time, insight, and talent. We are indebted to them for their efforts. We want to thank Theodore Wiprud, Director of Education, the New York Philharmonic, for his valuable insights and contributions. Special thanks also to Dr. Timothy Gerber, Professor of Music Education, The Ohio State University College of the Arts, for his generous assistance and support.

We are grateful to Elise Sobol, NYSSMA Chair for Special Learners, for her contributions to this edition; and we extend special thanks to Jerome Korman for his invaluable insight and assistance.

We thank Pam Pollack, our designer, whose amazing talent has turned this document into a beautiful and useful work of art; and Christine Bundrick-Michael, Megan Phadke, and Cristina Becker-Ellis for their time and effort; and we are deeply appreciative of Ken Priester for lending his skillful editorial eye to our work and Jason Dispinziere for his stunning photographs. We also extend our thanks to a discerning colleague, Barbara Gurr, for generously sharing her insights. We are extremely appreciative of Kate D. Levin, Commissioner of Cultural Affairs, and her staff, who provided steadfast support; Caroline Kennedy, Vice President of the Fund for Public Schools, and Stephanie Dua, CEO of the Fund for Public Schools, for their steadfast devotion to the arts and education.

Finally, we are most grateful for the support and assistance rendered by the outstanding Office of the Arts and Special Projects team: Joan Finkelstein, Yasmin Fodil, Paul King, Monica Panzarino, Jill Rashba, Eleanor Rosenthal, Karen Rosner, Joan Siscaretti, Carol Varikos-Marketan, and Eddie Villanueva.

We dedicate this *Blueprint* to the one million-plus New York City students whom we serve.



Barbara Murray







## Blueprint for Teaching and Learning in Music







Every New York City public school is capable of supporting an excellent arts program in which arts specialists are key players, the school community is actively involved, and the resources of the city’s cultural community are maximized. Changes in the New York City public schools have afforded an opportunity to make the arts central to the education that all children receive, regardless of the school they attend. This *Blueprint* points the way.

As the term “blueprint” suggests, this document is a roadmap that sets a course for the Department of Education’s strategic plan to provide an excellent arts education for every child in New York City. The standards contained in this *Blueprint* are grounded in the National and New York State Learning Standards for the Arts, and are addressed in every facet of the document. This *Blueprint* is distinguished from the *New York State Learning Standards* by the way teaching and learning are extended into the specific circumstances of New York City schools—most notably, the unique collaboration between the schools and the New York cultural community to forge this plan. New York City arts organizations and their funders play an ongoing role in making the arts available to schools. The schools have always depended on the values and commitment of these organizations, and it is only with the collaborative spirit of the entire arts community that this plan for arts education can succeed.

Traditionally, arts curricula have been developed either as subject-based or as outcome-based models. Subject-based curricula define the goals for the content to be learned. Outcome-based curricula define what the goals are for the learners—what they should know and what skills they should possess. The new plan includes both approaches, and will, as it evolves, provide clear and rigorous forms of assessment based on the best practices offered in the field. The *Blueprint*’s inclusive plan allows music teachers to select the approaches and the content that works best for them and their students.

## **I. Music Making**

By exploring, creating, replicating, and observing music, students build their technical and expressive skills, develop their artistry and a unique personal voice in music, and experience the power of music to communicate. They understand music as a universal language and a legacy of expression in every culture.

## **II. Music Literacy**

Students develop a working knowledge of music language and aesthetics, and apply it to analyzing, evaluating, documenting, creating, and performing music. They recognize their roles as articulate, literate musicians when communicating with their families, schools, and communities through music.

## **III. Making Connections**

By investigating historical, social, and cultural contexts, and by exploring common themes and principles connecting music with other disciplines, students enrich their creative work and understand the significance of music in the evolution of human thought and expression.

## **IV. Community and Cultural Resources**

Students broaden their perspective by working with professional artists and arts organizations that represent diverse cultural and personal approaches to music, and by seeing performances of widely varied music styles and genres. Active partnerships that combine school and local community resources with the full range of New York City's music and cultural institutions create a fertile ground for students' music learning and creativity.

## **V. Careers and Lifelong Learning**

Students consider the range of music and music-related professions as they think about their goals and aspirations, and understand how the various professions support and connect with each other. They carry physical, social, and cognitive skills learned in music, and an ability to appreciate and enjoy participating in music throughout their lives.

## Early Childhood and the Grade 2 Benchmark

Young children are naturally sensitive to musical sounds that communicate feelings, emotions, and beautiful images. They love to imitate, explore, and express themselves through activities that engage every aspect of their physical, sensory, and imaginative beings. Music making that provides speaking, singing, playing, moving, and composing opportunities for young children will develop the following skills and understandings:

- **Physical/Social:** Students acquire self-awareness as individual and group participants through music, dance, and dramatization; establish and differentiate mood and intent through verbal, musical, and imitative responses; develop large motor skills by skipping, walking, and running; acquire balance, coordination, and bodily control in response to rhythmic and metrical prompts.
- **Cognitive:** Students articulate responses to aural stimuli; follow guided directions for co-created outcomes; memorize through repetition lyrics, chants, rhythms; recognize, identify, and differentiate music materials, concepts, participants, and performers.
- **Aesthetic:** Students make interpretive choices and respond imaginatively.
- **Metacognitive:** Students reflect upon their own and their classmates' music making.

## Elementary Students and the Grade 5 Benchmark

In upper elementary school, children become increasingly keen observers of their world. They enjoy inventing games, working cooperatively, and creating personal codes and languages. An increased attention span enables memorization and the enjoyment of lengthened musical experiences. It also allows greater involvement in activities that require small-muscle control and dexterity. Through ongoing participation in musical studies, students develop the following skills and understandings:

- **Physical/Social:** Students deepen peer relationships through group endeavor, exploration, discussion, sharing, creating, and evaluating.
- **Cognitive:** Students differentiate, perceive, interpret, inquire, and analyze musical experiences.
- **Aesthetic:** Students create fantasy-inspired compositions, musical dramatizations; they initiate and evaluate musical activities.
- **Metacognitive:** Students notice, envision, and act upon opportunities to be designers of their own musical learning.

### **Middle School Students and the Grade 8 Benchmark**

Early adolescence embodies an exhilarating range of characteristics and contradictions. Physical, mental, and emotional fluctuations render middle school youngsters amenable to an environment that affirms their fledgling self-identity and developmental capacities. Sequential music study develops the following skills and understandings:

- **Physical/Social:** Students acquire vocal and instrumental dexterity; discover leadership skills; and engage in increased peer interaction and group decision making.
- **Cognitive:** Students analyze, differentiate, create, and compare performances, repertoire, and experiences.
- **Aesthetic:** Students develop self-expression as music makers; integrate music learning with personal observations and choices.
- **Metacognitive:** Students consider and assimilate a range of musical experiences to make appropriate responses.

### **High School Students and the Grade 12 Benchmark**

The late-adolescent music student may participate in a traditional performance-based ensemble, or he or she may choose a course of study that offers a range of listening, participatory, and responsive opportunities. For some, the high school music program will serve as preparation for concentrated study beyond the secondary level. Others will elect to develop and explore their musical capacities through a generalized core course of study. Both avenues provide an enjoyable outlet for self-expression, group interaction, and aesthetic growth. Sustained, sequential musical training develops the following skills and understandings:

- **Physical/Social:** Students acquire leadership capacity relative to performance ensembles and classroom learning environment.
- **Cognitive:** Students synthesize musical understandings; identify, organize, and discuss musical components.
- **Aesthetic:** Students integrate technique, artistry, and historical context to interpret music and music performances.
- **Metacognitive:** Students reflect upon their own work and the work of others to find opportunities for personal growth and creative development.

## Navigating the Music Blueprint

The *Blueprint for Music* addresses music education at four developmental levels—grades 2, 5, 8, and 12—and in three dimensions—core, vocal, and instrumental.

### **Benchmark**

Level of student achievement expected at a particular grade level.

### **Core Music**

A broad-based category of music study that incorporates the contents of the five strands of learning (formerly called “General Music”).

### **Learning Outcome**

Goal for student learning in a lesson or unit of study. Generally stated as: “Student will be able to ...”

### **Learning Indicator**

Demonstration of student understanding, skill, knowledge.

### **Learning Opportunities**

Variety of interactive activities that facilitate student learning.

### **Lesson Plan**

Organizational tool that sets the goals, objectives, procedures, learning opportunities, and assessments for a specific instructional period.

### **Rubric**

Tool created to assess student learning.

### **Strand**

One of five essential aspects of teaching and learning in arts: Music Making; Music Literacy; Making Connections; Community and Cultural Resources; Careers and Lifelong Learning.

### **Strand Component**

Core, vocal, instrumental music.

### **Unit Plan**

Long- or short-term planning tool for a body of related lessons. Lists goals, outcomes, materials, broad procedures, assessments.

### **Wraparound**

Template used to design teaching and learning opportunities related to the five strands in the *Blueprint for Music*.

## Organization of the Blueprint

The *Blueprint* for Music is organized by benchmark years, moving through the five strands of music learning for each benchmark. Scanning through the *Blueprint* and reading the pages in each benchmark year associated with any one strand gives a sense of the developmental learning in that strand.

The curriculum is both subject-based—defining the goals for content—and outcome-based—defining the goals for student achievement. We first list student learning within the grade level. This is followed by learning indicators and suggested experiences to achieve these outcomes. The *Blueprint* is meant to provide a framework for teachers, suggesting strategies that spur individual creativity, depth, and breadth in music teaching.

## Music Making Is the Starting Point

Each benchmark grade of the *Blueprint* for Music begins with Music Making, which encompasses all of the activities in which students are physically making music.

This list suggests a variety of starting points that can lead into the curriculum. The learning inherent in the other four strands of the *Blueprint*—Music Literacy; Making Connections; Community and Cultural Resources; Careers and Lifelong Learning—stems naturally from the music-making activities, and the activities in those strands are, in turn, bound with those in the Music Making strand. These four strands deepen music learning by providing students with the means to:

- develop critical insights and express them in musical terms.
- make social, cultural, and historical connections through music.
- connect creatively to other disciplines and to technology.
- engage in music learning with school staff and other sectors of the New York City music cultural community.
- become lifelong learners *in* and advocates *for* music.

This *Blueprint* is a scaffold on which a sequential, cohesive PreK-12 music curriculum may be built.



In this *Blueprint* for Music, a Wraparound is a creative tool for teaching music repertoire through the five strands of learning: Music Making; Music Literacy; Making Connections; Community and Lifelong Learning; and Careers and Lifelong Learning. It encourages one to brainstorm, investigate, and organize the elements, skills, information, and resources that are needed to teach and teach *through* repertoire.

When using the Wraparound tool, a music teacher selects repertoire intended for performance and supports student musicians in learning all of the necessary skills, information, observations, and cultural connections that are needed to authentically perform the work.

The process begins as a creative one: the music teacher, often in collaboration with teaching artists, performers, and other educators, considers all of the possible areas that would support teaching and learning a piece of repertoire.

The process begins with three questions:

1. What do students need to know and be able to do in order to authentically and successfully perform the musical selection?
2. What tools and resources are uniquely available in New York City?
3. What are the most effective ways of engaging the students in the process?

For example, with “Yonder Come Day,” based on the traditional Georgia Sea Islands spiritual and arranged by Judith Cook Tucker, a music-team brainstorming session might conclude:

- investigating the Georgia Sea Islands—geography, culture, history, food, traditions, language.
- researching the period when this spiritual took root—its politics, history, arts.
- listening to vocal and musical selections from that region and period.
- comparing and contrasting vocal styles.
- connecting physical movement to the islands’ culture and sounds.
- making personal connections to the islands’ culture.
- making site visits to local museums and libraries.

Guiding questions:

1. Which strand is the one you use the most?
2. Which strand is the most challenging to implement?
3. Which strand do you feel requires the greatest attention?
4. Which strand do you think is most fun for your students?
5. Which strand do you think is most important for your students?

Finally, the creative work is organized into the Wraparounds. It is then used as a guiding document that will include a means of assessing the work of both the students and the music team.

The Wraparound can be translated, with greater detail, into a Unit Plan and then into Lesson Plans.

The *Blueprint* Wraparounds contain songs and instrumental pieces with particularly rich opportunities in all five strands of teaching and learning in music:

- I. Music Making
- II. Music Literacy
- III. Making Connections
- IV. Community and Cultural Resources
- V. Careers and Lifelong Learning

These pieces come with a concise set of notes to support teachers striving to make each musical experience rich, engaging, and dynamic.



**Music Making:**

A complete music-making experience includes opportunities for:

- hands-on and interactive learning
- self-expression
- reflection

**Music Literacy:**

A complete education in music literacy develops the ability to use and understand the language of music through:

- listening and responding to live and recorded repertoire
- notation, recording, and digital media
- description, analysis, and evaluation

**Making Connections:**

A complete musical experience is enriched by:

- recognizing parallels between music and other disciplines
- gaining an understanding of the cultural and historical context of music
- exploring personal connections with music

**Community and Cultural Resources:**

A complete musical education includes establishing mutual relationships within:

- the classroom
- New York City
- the global cultural community

**Careers and Lifelong Learning:**

A complete musical education will result in a lifelong relationship with music in one or all of the following capacities:

- professional
- avocational
- consumer-related

**Assessment:**

A plan for embedded assessment should be part of every Wraparound.



**Benchmark:**

**Students engage in activities to experience elements of music.**

**Students will be able to:**

- perform music with repetitive or contrasting patterns.
- maintain a steady pulse at various tempi through call and response, clapping, tapping, or other movement.
- create rhythmic patterns in relation to a steady beat.
- perform in duple and triple meter.
- explore melodic contour through singing, movement, and labeled pitches.
- perform music with a variety of dynamic levels.
- explore different timbres by using a variety of instruments and vocal sounds.

**In addition to Core Music Indicators, if studying Vocal Music, students also will be able to:**

- sing songs from a variety of musical genres.
- differentiate the four main uses of the voice: whispering, talking, shouting, and singing.
- imitate proper use of head voice.\*

**In addition to Core Music Indicators, if studying Instrumental Music, students also will be able to:**

- accompany songs from diverse cultures.
- demonstrate the use of dynamics and timbre using pitched and non-pitched instruments.
- identify a range of sound qualities on traditional and non-traditional (such as found or homemade) instruments.

**Benchmark:**

**Students develop awareness of human expression through music making.**

**Students will be able to:**

- perform in solo and group settings with attention to feeling and musical interpretation.
- express themselves by improvising on thematic material.

**In addition to Core Music Indicators, if studying Vocal Music, students also will be able to:**

- sing songs in English and other languages with attention to feeling and musical interpretation.
- participate in movement games as solo or group singers.

**In addition to Core Music Indicators, if studying Instrumental Music, students also will be able to:**

- play instruments with attention to feeling and musical interpretation.
- participate in movement games as solo or group instrumentalists.

\*head voice: the upper register of the singing voice that resonates within the sinus cavity

“Music is your own experience, your thoughts, your wisdom. If you don't live it, it won't come out of your horn.” *Charlie Parker*

**A complete music-making experience includes opportunities for:**

- Hands-on and interactive learning
- Self-expression
- Reflection



## 2nd Grade Music Making

### Benchmark:

#### Students discover the singing voice and build technique singing and playing.

##### Students will be able to:

- follow musical cues while singing, playing, and moving.
- apply technique\* to make their own musical choices.
- make musical choices through the exploration of voices and instruments.

##### In addition to Core Music Indicators, if studying Vocal Music, students also will be able to:

- develop physical awareness of vocal production.
- demonstrate how correct body alignment impacts breathing and vocal tone.
- exhibit increasing vocal stamina.
- describe how their performance is affected by their emerging vocal technique.\*

##### In addition to Core Music Indicators, if studying Instrumental Music, students also will be able to:

- develop physical awareness of instrumental playing.
- play a variety of instruments with attention to tone quality.
- describe how their performance is affected by their emerging instrumental technique.

### Benchmark:

#### Students show respect for their instruments, music materials, and learning environment.

##### Students will be able to:

- show proper care and maintenance of classroom and voice/instruments.

### Benchmark:

#### Students learn routines that contribute to positive music-making experiences.

##### Students will be able to:

- demonstrate respectful behavior as performers and listeners.
- participate in classroom protocols and traditions for music making.

\*technique: see glossary; also, the application of skills-building approaches for voice and instruments

#### A complete music-making experience includes opportunities for:

- Hands-on and interactive learning
- Self-expression
- Reflection





## Core Music Learning Opportunities

### Have students:

- learn, sing, and perform a song such as the spiritual “Yonder Come Day.” Perform in unison and in a round with varying dynamics. Identify form, meter, and tempo.
- use classroom and electronic instruments to create a short ABA composition within specific guidelines (e.g., use three pitches and two timbres), with attention to the contrasting elements of the sections.
- create a soundscape based on a story, capturing its essence in an ensemble using traditional and non-traditional instruments.
- improvise simple question and answer phrases using the voice as well as melodic instruments (e.g., recorders, xylophones).
- demonstrate the appropriate musical response to given directions (e.g., stopping and starting, playing loud or soft, playing staccato or legato).

### Vocal Music Learning Opportunity

#### In addition to Core Learning Opportunities, have students:

- sing a familiar song such as “Old MacDonald” with attention to timbre of various animal sounds.



### Instrumental Music Learning Opportunity

#### In addition to Core Learning Opportunities, have students:

- improvise an ostinato accompaniment on pitched and non-pitched percussion instruments for a simple song such as “Frere Jacques.”

### A complete music-making experience includes opportunities for:

- Hands-on and interactive learning
- Self-expression
- Reflection

Benchmark:

Students explore music in the following areas:

Elements, Notation, and Vocabulary	Genre and Style	Instruments, Voices, and Ensembles	Production and Technology
<p><b>Students will be able to:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ express the fundamental elements of music through words, movement, and/or visual imagery.</li> <li>■ make the connection between sounds and symbols.</li> <li>■ recognize and create rudimentary graphic representations of specific sounds using traditional and non-traditional notation.</li> <li>■ describe a musical experience using appropriate vocabulary.</li> <li>■ compare and contrast the elements of music.</li> <li>■ create/draw symbols to represent simple rhythms.</li> <li>■ create/draw symbols to represent melodic contour/pitch.</li> <li>■ recognize elements of formal music notation (staff, measures, bar lines, and simple rhythmic notation).</li> <li>■ identify and use comparatives (fast/slow, loud/soft, and high/low).</li> <li>■ critique recorded and group performance (too fast/slow, too loud/soft, and correct/incorrect pitch).</li> </ul>	<p><b>Students will be able to:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ distinguish and describe different styles of music.</li> <li>■ identify and illustrate emotional and expressive qualities of music and text.</li> </ul>	<p><b>Students will be able to:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ identify ensemble groupings.</li> <li>■ categorize voice types and how they sound.</li> <li>■ categorize instruments and the sounds they make.</li> </ul>	<p><b>Students will be able to:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ demonstrate appropriate audience behavior.</li> <li>■ describe the roles of participants in a performance.</li> <li>■ identify various types of music performance.</li> <li>■ capture and share music through a recording or performance.</li> </ul>

“Music and rhythm find their way into the secret places of the soul.” Plato

A complete education in music develops the ability to use and understand the language of music through:

- Listening and responding to live and recorded repertoire
- Notation, recording, and music technology
- Description, analysis, and evaluation

**Benchmark:**  
**Students explore music.**

**In addition to Core Music Indicators, if studying Vocal Music, students also will be able to:**

- identify, sing, move to, and describe musical elements (fast/slow, loud/soft, and high/low).
- distinguish between verse and refrain.
- make improvements in use of head voice\* and diction.
- identify melodic contour through singing and movement.
- recognize elements of formal music notation (staff, measures, bar lines, and simple rhythmic notation).
- distinguish and describe music of different vocal styles and languages.

**In addition to Core Music Indicators, if studying Instrumental Music, students also will be able to:**

- identify, play, and describe musical elements (fast/slow, loud/soft, and high/low).
- recognize elements of formal music notation (staff, measures, bar lines, and simple rhythmic notation).
- critique group performance using musical elements (too fast/slow, too loud/soft, and correct/incorrect pitch).
- make personal connections—describe mood(s) of piece.
- identify melodic contour through playing and movement.
- distinguish and describe instrumental music of different styles.

\*head voice: the upper register of the singing voice that resonates within the sinus cavity



**A complete education in music develops the ability to use and understand the language of music through:**

- Listening and responding to live and recorded repertoire
- Notation, recording, and music technology
- Description, analysis, and evaluation



### Core Music Learning Opportunities

#### Have students:

- listen to and sing a song like “El Chorrito” by Cri-Cri, and express its lyrics through movement and dramatization.
- listen to a recording of a symphonic or chamber work, and respond to its mood using descriptive words such as “happy,” “sad,” “scary,” or “funny.”
- chant simple rhythm patterns using the Kodaly system, saying “ta” for quarter notes and “ti” for eighth notes.
- play classroom instruments, such as Orff instruments, and identify them by timbre and method of sound production. Or, using a set of Latin percussion instruments, play and discover their characteristic sounds. Create a vocabulary list of the instruments and the ways they are played.
- discuss student performances, with attention to tone, articulation, and ensemble.

#### Vocal Music Learning Opportunity

##### In addition to Core Learning Opportunities, have students:

- listen to a musical selection, such as “This Little Light of Mine,” sung by different artists/groups. Compare/contrast each performance. Learn/perform the song with chosen expression and emotional qualities of the text. Adapt movement to express the text.
- vocalize and distinguish pitches, using vocabulary such as “high,” “middle,” and “low.”

#### Instrumental Music Learning Opportunity

##### In addition to Core Learning Opportunities, have students:

- listen to Sergei Prokofiev’s “Peter and the Wolf” and respond through movement to changes in tempo, meter, dynamics, and styles. Act out the story as characters while the music is playing. Look at pictures of the instruments used in the music and categorize by family.



1947 coloring book cover.

A complete education in music develops the ability to use and understand the language of music through:

- Listening and responding to live and recorded repertoire
- Notation, recording, and music technology
- Description, analysis, and evaluation

## 2nd Grade Making Connections

Benchmark:

**Students recognize parallel problem-solving strategies across disciplines.**

Students will be able to:

- articulate forms in music and how they are evident in dance and visual arts.

Benchmark:

**Students realize that music reflects composers' emotions, ideas, imagination, and cultural context.**

Students will be able to:

- describe the composer's function.
- identify the composer of selected repertoire.
- sing and play music from a variety of world cultures.
- identify country of origin and basic cultural characteristics of composers whose music they listen to and perform.

Benchmark:

**Students make connections between music and personal feelings.**

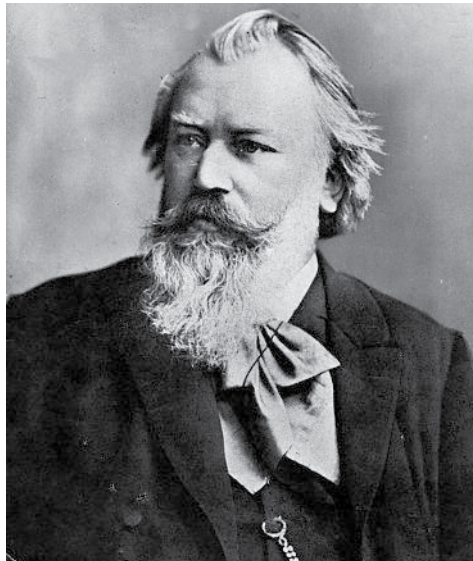
Students will be able to:

- articulate their individual musical choices and contributions to group music making.
- identify and describe the emotional aspects of selected repertoire.

### Core Music Learning Opportunities

Have students:

- illustrate musical forms such as AB, ABA, etc. using colored building blocks of varied geometric shapes.
- use student-constructed puppets to enact aspects of composers' lives and communicate responses to music.
- provide pictorial representations of form that correspond to selected repertoire. Students circle responses to directed questions (e.g., triangle, circle, triangle for "Twinkle, Twinkle Little Star," ABA; apple and orange for "Frere Jacques," AB).
- use body motions to represent form (e.g., steady beat on knees for A section, tap shoulders for B section).
- use classroom instruments and found materials to show contrasting dynamics (forte/piano) articulation (legato/staccato), mood.
- create a unit of study on lullabies from various world cultures.
- demonstrate duple, triple rocking movement while singing lullabies. Students discuss and incorporate emotional characteristics of lullabies into their performances.
- listen to Brahms' "Lullaby." Show students Brahms' picture and tell them of his reputation as a nature lover who often walked in the Vienna woods handing out penny candy to children. Discuss how his music demonstrates his love for children.



Johannes Brahms

“Music is the shorthand of emotion.”  
Leo Tolstoy

**A complete musical experience is enriched by making connections:**

- Recognizing parallels between music and other disciplines
- Gaining an understanding of the cultural and historical context of music
- Exploring personal connections with music

## 2nd Grade Community and Cultural Resources

### Benchmark:

**Students identify music makers in their families, schools, and communities.**

#### Students will be able to:

- identify and explore the diverse range of musical instruments and styles.
- work with teaching artists who have specialized areas of music learning.
- access musical content from the Internet.

### Benchmark:

**Students attend live performances in their communities.**

#### Students will be able to:

- perform for and listen to each other.
- contribute to a large-scale interdisciplinary class project around the study of a particular culture or period in history.
- incorporate music into interdisciplinary projects.

### Benchmark:

**Students share their musical experience with the school community.**

#### Students will be able to:

- identify cultural resources in their neighborhoods—including libraries, community music schools, afterschool programs, musicians, and performance venues.
- make connections between performances attended in their community and aspects of their own music making.

### Core Music Learning Opportunities

#### Have students:

- write a personal narrative and collaborate with a teaching artist in setting the words to music. Listen to music that tells a story, such as griot and/or folk songs, bluegrass, musicals, etc.
- present a grade-level assembly, with each class representing an aspect of global music and culture in song with accompaniment. Invite parents and younger grades.
- write words pertaining to a particular topic (e.g., dinosaurs) using the melody to an existing song.
- provide students and families with lists of performance venues that offer free and low-cost family tickets.
- participate in class trips to cultural institutions or schools that offer musical performances. Prepare in advance to maximize student interaction and learning.

“Music is well said  
to be the speech of  
angels.” Thomas Carlyle

**A complete musical education includes  
establishing relationships among:**

- The classroom
- New York City
- The global cultural community

## 2nd Grade Careers and Lifelong Learning

### Benchmark:

**Students identify the various aspects/options of lifelong music involvement.**

#### Students will be able to:

- identify the ways in which people engage in music (performer, listener, teacher, administrator, tech staff, etc.).
- identify the ways in which music is made available (live performance, recorded performance, CDs, downloads, etc.).
- explore various roles that music can play in their lives.

### Core Music Learning Opportunities

#### Have students:

- attend live performances in their communities.
- share their music experience with the school community.
- identify music makers in their families, schools, and communities.
- narrate a story and create musical accompaniment using rhythm instruments. Perform the story and assign each student a role, such as: narrator, actor, musician, conductor, set/costume designer, tech/lighting/sound, composer, audience member, poster designer, usher, ticket maker and seller, etc.
- draw a picture representing a person in the arts professions. Create a book with pictures and text that describes a particular career path.
- sing songs about people's jobs, such as "I've Been Working on the Railroad," "Whistle While You Work," or "Working Together" by Carmino Ravosa. Make up original verses to reflect jobs students can identify in their lives.
- list places in the community where music is performed. Identify the function and role of music in their daily lives (school, home, place of worship, shopping mall, etc.). Describe or compare ways music is used at home and at school for holidays, celebrations, and traditions.
- create a list of expected behaviors before attending a concert in the school or community. Discuss and model expectations in class.



“When the music changes, so does the dance.”  
African proverb

**A complete musical education will result in a lifelong relationship with music in one or all of the following capacities:**

- Professional
- Avocational
- Consumer-related

## “Rain, Rain, Go Away”

### Music Making

Students:

- listen to a CD containing soothing environmental sounds (e.g., the ocean, a rainforest, birds, the wind).
- simulate the sounds orally using breath, long-sustained vowels, or short percussive sounds made at the front of the mouth.

Teacher:

- selects a group of students to recreate these soothing sounds, while the rest of the class closes their eyes and listens and imagines. This can also be used at the end of the lesson to “cool down.”
- sings “Rain, Rain, Go Away” a capella, and asks if any of the students are acquainted with it. (Responses will vary.)

Students:

- sing the song with the teacher and by themselves. Repeat song using loud and soft dynamics.

Teacher:

- explains the difference between loud and soft by conducting students through a piano rendition and a forte rendition of the song. Gradations of piano and forte (e.g., mezzo piano and mezzo forte) are explored.

Students:

- demonstrate dynamic gradations by using their bodies and their voices: small movements for piano; large, broad movements for forte.

Teacher:

- arranges students in a circle to demonstrate possible movements for “Rain, Rain, Go Away.”
- elicits students’ input by asking, “How can we show ‘go away’ and ‘come again’ by using our bodies?”
- incorporates students’ suggestions into the circle performance.
- directs students to sit in a circle, and asks them, “What does tone color mean?”
- leads children in playing a simple guessing game. Students close their eyes and are asked to identify a peer saying “hello” solely by the sound of his or her voice. The concept of tone color is explained.
- directs students’ attention to several rhythm instruments, and asks, “Which of these instruments’ tone color would make the sound of a thunderstorm, and which would make the sound of a soft drizzle?”

Students:

- use rhythm instruments to accompany “Rain, Rain, Go Away,” and incorporate dynamic variations—piano (drizzle), forte (thunderstorm)—in their playing.
- sing and play the song in a circle.

Teacher:

- plays a jazz rendition of “Rain, Rain, Go Away” for comparison.

Students:

- accompany recording on an Orff instrument.

### Music Literacy

Students:

- play “Rain, Rain, Go Away” melody using bells or xylophone.
- analyze the melody for steps, skips, and repeated tones.
- identify and name the various rhythm instruments they are playing.
- compare their playing with the jazz rendition of “Rain, Rain, Go Away.” What is the difference between the two versions? What instruments are heard? Is it faster, slower, louder or softer? Musical terms addressed during the listening and performance process include:

piano  
forte  
mp  
mf  
crescendo  
diminuendo  
steady beat  
tone color  
dynamics  
tempo  
variation

Additional listening: Ludwig van Beethoven’s Symphony No. 6 in F Major, Op. 68, IV. “Thunderstorm”

### Making Connections

Students:

- discuss weather patterns, the sounds of weather, and how they make them feel.
- identify areas that receive a lot of rain (e.g., the Amazon rainforest, the British Isles).
- discuss Ludwig van Beethoven; how he used music to express nature and how it made him feel.
- learn a variety of songs from different cultures relating to rain or nature.

### Suggested Resources

*Pathways to the Orchestra*  
New York Philharmonic, Special Editions, 2003  
Unit 4: Dynamics  
Level One

*Elementary Music Sampler* (Expressions Music Curriculum)  
Warner Bros. Publications, 2003  
CD, Track 14, “Rain, Rain, Go Away” (vocal jazz version)

*Brazilian Playground* (CD)  
Putumayo World Music Collections  
[www.putumayo.com/en/putumayo\\_kids\\_cd.php](http://www.putumayo.com/en/putumayo_kids_cd.php)

### Community and Cultural Resources

Teachers:

- collaborate with a visiting teaching artist(s) or musician(s).

Teaching artist/musician:

- assists students in composing songs dealing with rain or nature.
- accompanies teacher and students on culminating visit to a natural science museum or exhibit that deals with the rainforest and/or the environment.
- assist students in recycling materials to create and decorate rhythm instruments such as rainsticks, tambourines, maracas, drums, flutes.

Students:

- accompany themselves on self-constructed instruments while singing.
- discuss recycling and saving Earth’s environment.

### Careers and Lifelong Learning

Students:

- reflect upon the importance of the balance of nature and its impact on our planet.
- consider questions such as:  
What would happen if there were no more rain?  
How would our lives change?  
Why is it important to have rain and a healthy environment?  
What can we do to ensure the rain will never stop falling?









Benchmark

**Students apply understanding of elements of music through performance activities.**

**Students will be able to:**

- perform and recognize musical forms: binary, ternary, rondo, and popular song.
- perform in duple and triple meters.
- perform in a variety of tempos.
- perform rhythmic patterns with accuracy: whole, half, quarter, eighth, and dotted rhythms.
- sing and play in harmony: rounds, songs with ostinato, and music in two parts.
- incorporate dynamics: crescendo and decrescendo.
- perform with a variety of timbres.

**In addition to Core Music Indicators, if studying Vocal Music, students also will be able to:**

- sing expressively using dynamics, rhythm, and articulation.
- demonstrate awareness of vowel sounds and use of consonant sounds to develop tone quality.
- perform music that expands the vocal range to include C1–D2.

**In addition to Core Music Indicators, if studying Instrumental Music, students also will be able to:**

- play expressively using dynamics, rhythm, and articulation.
- produce a secure tone.
- hear and adjust intonation.

Benchmark:

**Students become aware of themselves as musicians through performance, improvisation, and composition.**

**Students will be able to:**

- perform solo and ensemble music of emotional and intellectual complexity.
- improvise and compose music on a given subject or from imagination.
- create simple meter compositions (4/4, 3/4, or 2/4).

**In addition to Core Music Indicators, if studying Vocal Music, students also will be able to:**

- sing songs in multiple languages with attention to the relationship between text and melody.
- sing solo and ensemble music with opportunities for improvisation.

**In addition to Core Music Indicators, if studying Instrumental Music, students also will be able to:**

- perform repertoire that demands stylistic and emotional expression.
- play solo and ensemble music with opportunity for improvisation.

“Play the music,  
not the instrument.”  
Anonymous

**A complete music-making experience includes opportunities for:**

- Hands-on and interactive learning
- Self-expression
- Reflection



## 5th Grade Music Making

Benchmark:

**Students build and apply vocal and instrumental technique.**

Students will be able to:

- create and respond to musical cues while singing, playing, and moving.
- make choices that incorporate prior musical knowledge.

**In addition to Core Music Indicators, if studying Vocal Music, students also will be able to:**

- refine basic vocal technique and posture.

**In addition to Core Music Indicators, if studying Instrumental Music, students also will be able to:**

- refine basic instrumental technique and posture.

Benchmark:

**Students take responsibility for their instruments, music materials, and learning environment.**

Students will be able to:

- show proper care and maintenance of classroom instruments and the voice.

Benchmark:

**Students follow established routines that contribute to positive music-making experiences.**

Students will be able to:

- demonstrate an understanding of a variety of musical traditions through appropriate audience and performance etiquette.

**A complete music-making experience includes opportunities for:**

- Hands-on and interactive learning
- Self-expression
- Reflection



## Core Music Learning Opportunities

### Have students:

- explore the appropriate musical responses to the visual (notation), oral (spoken), and physical (gesture).
- learn, sing, act, and take turns conducting a traditional song such as “Erie Canal” with various tempos and dynamics.
- create an original rhythmic piece in ABA form and conduct class performance using varying dynamics and tempos.

## Vocal Music Learning Opportunities

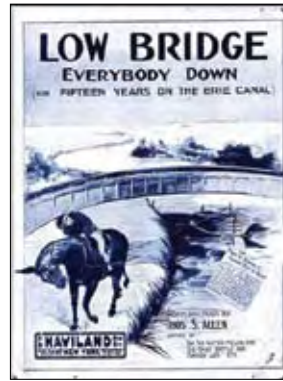
### In addition to Core Learning Opportunities, have students:

- perform rhythmic and technical exercises based on repertoire.
- perform different ranges of dynamics within single-note and long-tone exercises.
- perform a musical selection such as “Bist Du Bei Mir” (BWV 508) by Gottfried Heinrich Stölzel with attention to correct entrances, cut-offs, fermata, dynamics, and tempo.
- research and present a written or oral report on the vocal instrument.
- learn, sing, and perform an American folk song such as “The Water Is Wide” (NYSSMA Level II) with attention to interpretation, tempo, meter, and personal expression.
- utilize call and response to develop students’ awareness of vocal blend, and solidify the resulting sound.

## Instrumental Music Learning Opportunities

### In addition to Core Learning Opportunities, have students:

- perform rhythmic and technical exercises based on repertoire.
- perform different ranges of dynamics within single-note and long-tone exercises.
- demonstrate proper shoulder-rest placement.
- demonstrate proper rosinning of the bow, oiling of valves.
- hold instrument correctly during case placement/rest position.
- identify the parts of the instrument, and correctly position in the case.
- demonstrate how to hold instrument parts properly during assembly.



Cover of sheet music published in 1923.

A complete music-making experience includes opportunities for:

- Hands-on and interactive learning
- Self-expression
- Reflection



Benchmark:

Students identify music in the following areas:

Elements, Notation, and Vocabulary	Genre and Style	Instruments, Voices, and Ensembles	Production and Technology
<p><b>Students will be able to:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ demonstrate and articulate an understanding of the fundamental elements of music in varied repertoire using words, movements, or images.</li> <li>■ distinguish between duple and triple meters in a variety of tempos.</li> <li>■ apply understanding of notation.</li> <li>■ recognize, identify, and notate the pitches of the treble clef.</li> <li>■ recognize and create graphic sound representations using traditional and non-traditional notation.</li> <li>■ examine a piece of music, using it as a tool to identify concepts such as pitch, dynamics, and meter.</li> </ul>	<p><b>Students will be able to:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ describe how genres and styles of music connect to history and culture.</li> <li>■ describe various emotive and expressive qualities of music.</li> <li>■ distinguish and describe music of varied styles.</li> <li>■ describe various emotional and expressive qualities of music.</li> </ul>	<p><b>Students will be able to:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ distinguish, compare, and contrast voices, instruments, and ensembles.</li> </ul>	<p><b>Students will be able to:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ describe the production components of a performance.</li> <li>■ participate in music using appropriate tools and social behaviors.</li> <li>■ identify the various processes by which music is made available.</li> <li>■ use music technology tools to learn about the elements of music.</li> </ul>



“If this word “music” is sacred and reserved for eighteenth and nineteenth century instruments, we can substitute a more meaningful term: organization of sound.” *John Cage*

A complete education in music develops the ability to use and understand the language of music through:

- Listening and responding to live and recorded repertoire
- Notation, recording, and music technology
- Description, analysis, and evaluation



**Benchmark:**  
**Students identify music.**

**In addition to Core Music Indicators, if studying Vocal Music, students also will be able to:**

- identify, sing, move to, and describe musical elements, using specific musical language (meter, tempo, dynamics, pitch, timbre).
- follow a unison line score.
- respond to tempo and dynamic markings.
- recognize and notate complex rhythms.
- recognize that there is an intervallic relationship between pitches in a melody.
- analyze form in writing and discussion using musical vocabulary.
- aurally distinguish between AB and ABA.
- respond to repeat signs.
- critique performance in writing and discussion: make corrections in vocal production (breath, articulation, phrasing, tone); use vocabulary (tempo, dynamics, pitch).
- make personal connections in writing and discussion. For example, describe possible mood(s) intended by composer; interpret text for emotional content.
- follow a vocal score of a piece they are rehearsing.
- demonstrate understanding of music vocabulary through their performance.
- examine a piece of vocal/choral music, using it as a tool to identify concepts such as pitch, dynamics, meter, and musical density.

**In addition to Core Music Indicators, if studying Instrumental Music, students also will be able to:**

- identify, play, move to, and describe musical elements, using specific musical language (meter, tempo, articulations, form, entrance and release, rhythm, dynamics, pitch, timbre).
- identify basic terminology such as tempo (andante, moderato, allegro), dynamics (piano, forte, mezzo, crescendo, decrescendo), articulations (legato, staccato, slurs, ties, hooked bows).
- recognize clef of instrument being played.
- recognize eight-note Major scale pattern; start/end on same pitch.
- recognize bar lines, measures, time signatures, staff, and down/up bow.
- analyze form in writing and discussion, using musical vocabulary: binary (AB) and ternary (ABA) forms, da capo (“from the beginning”), del segno (“from the sign”), and repeat signs.
- critique—in writing and discussion—individual’s performance (e.g., pitch, articulations, bow control) and ensemble’s performance (e.g., blend and balance) of a musical selection.
- make personal connections in writing and discussion: describe possible mood(s) intended by composer and interpret tempos/dynamics in performances.
- follow an instrumental score, identifying musical symbols and vocabulary.
- demonstrate understanding of music through their performance.
- examine a piece of instrumental music, using it as a tool to identify concepts such as pitch, dynamics, meter, and musical density.



**A complete education in music develops the ability to use and understand the language of music through:**

- **Listening and responding to live and recorded repertoire**
- **Notation, recording, and music technology**
- **Description, analysis, and evaluation**

## Core Music Learning Opportunities

### Have students:

- listen to an American spiritual such as “Swing Low, Sweet Chariot” and, working in small groups, discuss feelings the song evokes. Use pantomime to demonstrate and capture responses.
- read and clap/play rhythm patterns that include whole, half, quarter, eighth, and dotted rhythms.
- listen to an instrumental repertoire selection, then brainstorm/list the emotions and feelings evoked by the music. Discuss and report back to the class.
- listen to an orchestral piece such as “Dance Macabre” (Saint-Saens) and, in small groups, brainstorm/list the emotions and feelings evoked by the music. Discuss and report back to the class.
- identify musical forms, using letters A, B, C, etc., in songs such as “Rondo Alla Turca” (Mozart) and “Twinkle, Twinkle Little Star.”

## Vocal Music Learning Opportunities

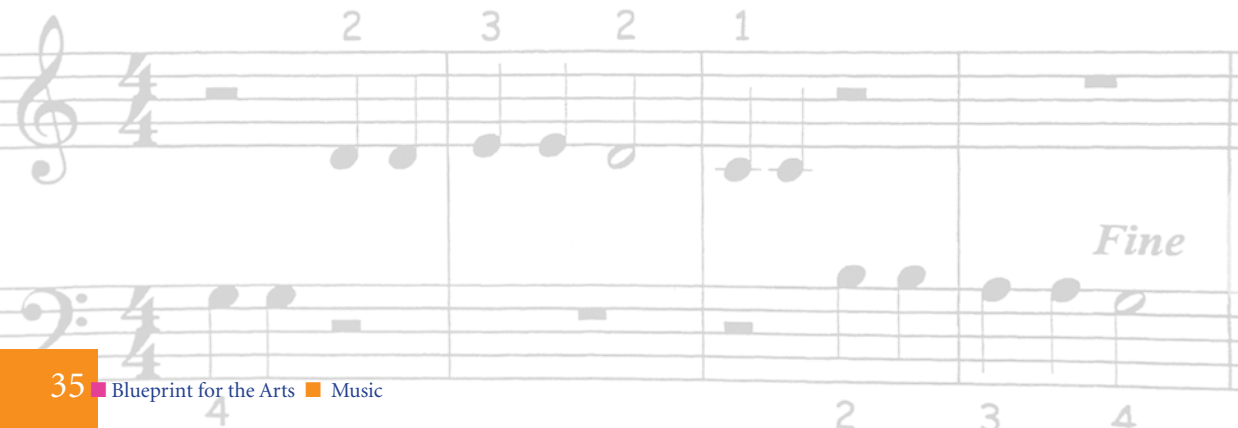
### In addition to Core Learning Opportunities, have students:

- listen to different versions (solo—different voice; choral—different types of groups) of the same piece. Discuss differences/similarities of each performance using music vocabulary. Discuss feelings each performance evokes.
- listen to a vocal or choral piece of music such as Copland’s “Ching-a-Ring Chaw” or Britten’s “The Sally Gardens.” Use music terminology to describe tempo, dynamics, meter, and texture.
- follow the score of a choral composition and identify musical symbols and vocabulary. Trace the melodic theme throughout the voice parts.

## Instrumental Music Learning Opportunities

### In addition to Core Learning Opportunities, have students:

- compare and contrast solo, piano, and orchestral versions of instrumental works such as “Pictures at an Exhibition” (Mussorgsky). Discuss similarities and differences.
- listen to a short piece of instrumental music—such as “Drums of Passion” (Baba Olatunji), “San Toma” (performed by Los Pleneros de la 21), or “Little Fugue” (Handel)—and use music terminology to describe tempo, dynamics, meter, and musical density.
- perform the melody of “Ode to Joy” (from Beethoven’s Ninth Symphony) and/or follow a score of an arrangement played in class. Distinguish between the steps and leaps in the melody, and examine it for musical concepts such as pitch, dynamics, meter, and musical density. Listen to the orchestral version, and respond through drawing and creative writing.



A complete education in music develops the ability to use and understand the language of music through:

- Listening and responding to live and recorded repertoire
- Notation, recording, and music technology
- Description, analysis, and evaluation

## 5th Grade Making Connections

Benchmark:

**Students recognize and apply parallel problem-solving strategies across disciplines.**

Students will be able to:

- identify common forms in literature, visual arts, dance, and music (e.g., essay/sonata).
- apply familiar observational strategies to music analysis: Who? What? Where? When? Why?
- apply arithmetical functions to the understanding of note values and meter.

Benchmark:

**Students describe how music reflects composers' emotions, ideas, imagination, and historical context.**

Students will be able to:

- identify the cultural components of selected repertoire in concerts, recordings, and their own performances.
- draw parallels between the work of the composer and the visual artist.

Benchmark:

**Students describe personal connections with a variety of musical styles.**

Students will be able to:

- describe the ways in which different musical styles and genres evoke ranges of responses.
- transfer approaches to learning from other subjects to music (e.g., observation, problem solving, analysis, decoding).

### Core Music Learning Opportunities

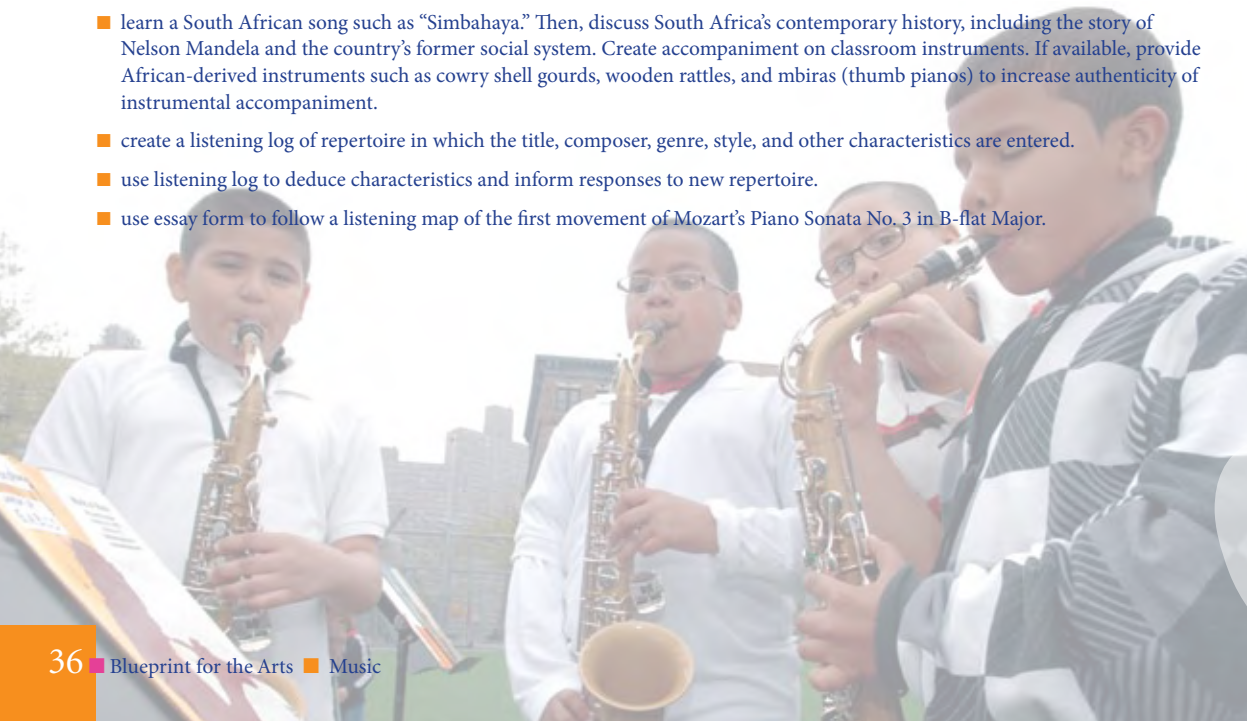
Have students:

- work in small groups and explore the historical roots of selected composers, musical eras, styles, and repertoire. Compare groups' findings.
- learn a South African song such as "Simbahaya." Then, discuss South Africa's contemporary history, including the story of Nelson Mandela and the country's former social system. Create accompaniment on classroom instruments. If available, provide African-derived instruments such as cowry shell gourds, wooden rattles, and mbiras (thumb pianos) to increase authenticity of instrumental accompaniment.
- create a listening log of repertoire in which the title, composer, genre, style, and other characteristics are entered.
- use listening log to deduce characteristics and inform responses to new repertoire.
- use essay form to follow a listening map of the first movement of Mozart's Piano Sonata No. 3 in B-flat Major.

“A jazz musician is a juggler who uses harmonies instead of oranges.” *Benny Green*

**A complete musical experience is enriched by making connections:**

- Recognizing parallels between music and other disciplines
- Gaining an understanding of the cultural and historical context of music
- Exploring personal connections with music





## 5th Grade Community and Cultural Resources

### Benchmark:

#### Students identify music makers and music-making institutions in New York City.

##### Students will be able to:

- participate in short- and long-term artists' residencies that support and enhance the school music program.
- participate in short- and long-term artists' residencies that support interdisciplinary learning.
- apply skills and knowledge from artists' residencies to the classroom.
- use Internet and library research techniques to augment their musical knowledge.

### Benchmark:

#### Students attend live performances in New York City.

##### Students will be able to:

- perform for and listen to—as educated musicians—performers from other schools.
- represent their school at community events.

### Benchmark:

#### Students extend their music-making experiences beyond the school community.

##### Students will be able to:

- explore the range and diversity of music performances available in New York City.
- compare concert events based on the variety of their experiences as audience members.

### Core Music Learning Opportunities

#### Have students:

- create instruments made from recycled or found materials.
- work with a teaching artist to create a group-composed work for these instruments.
- create a theme-related presentation containing spoken narration, visual aids, and songs. Perform for school, parents, and community members.
- use the Internet to identify music makers and music-making institutions in New York City.
- schedule a class trip to one music venue in each borough of New York City.
- organize grade-wide evening event for students and parents culminating in attendance at annual Borough-Wide Salute to Music Program concert.
- develop musical skills and self-expression with the assistance of the music teacher and teaching artist by engaging in projects that expand the students' musical world. For example:
  - » an instrumentalist performing or arranging student compositions
  - » a singer demonstrating various vocal timbres and singing styles
  - » a musician leading students in a participatory performance using a variety of instruments and leading a discussion about the process
  - » a composer assisting students in editing, documenting, and reflecting on their own short pieces

“Music is the mediator between the spiritual and the sensual life.”

*Ludwig van Beethoven*

#### A complete musical education includes establishing relationships among:

- The classroom
- New York City
- The global cultural community



# 5th Grade Careers and Lifelong Learning

## Benchmark:

**Students define and categorize various aspects/options of lifelong music involvement.**

### Students will be able to:

- describe in detail—orally or in writing—at least three different careers in the field of music.
- describe in detail—orally or in writing—at least three different ways of accessing music.
- use appropriate tools (musical instruments, tech equipment, online resources, etc.) and social behaviors.

### Core Music Learning Opportunities

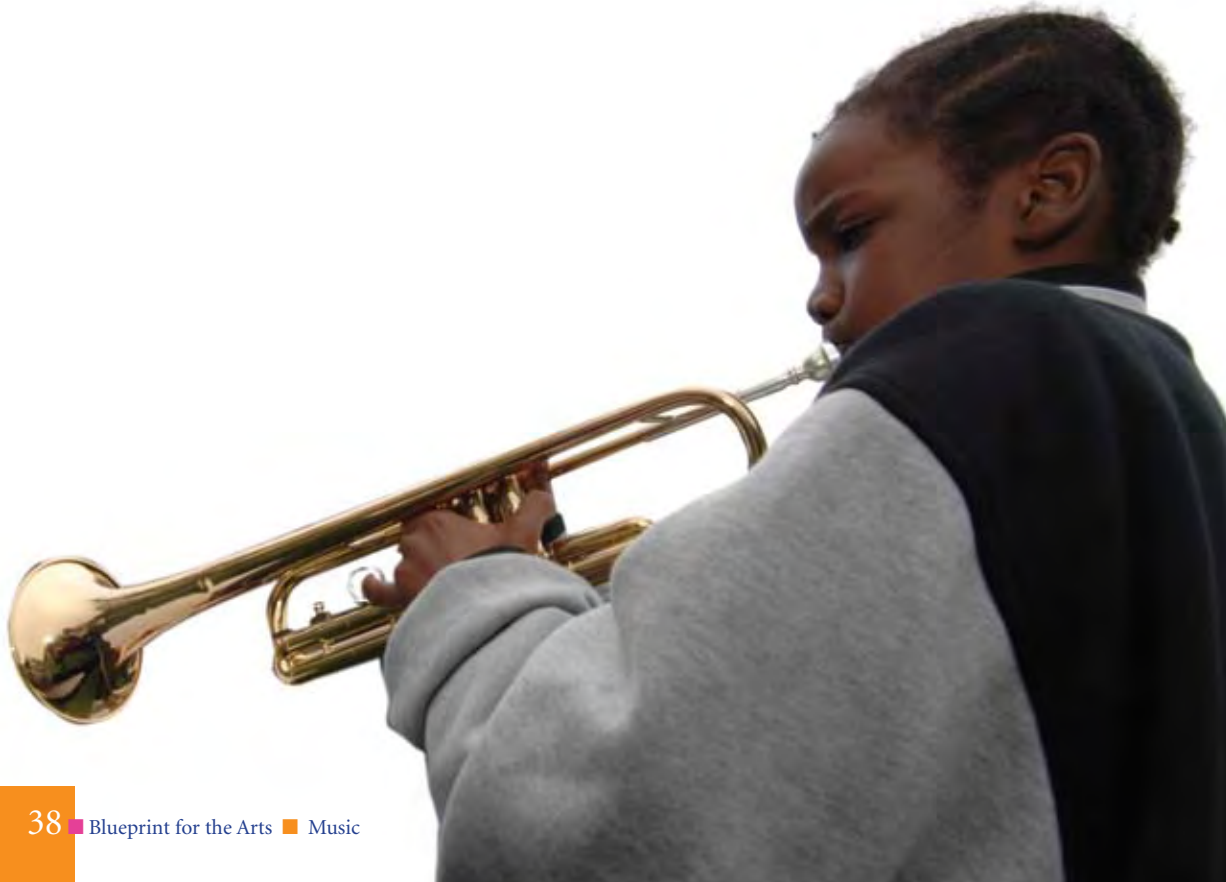
#### Have students:

- write a review of a concert attended inside or outside of school. Publish it in the school newspaper.
- attend a concert or musical, and invite a performer to visit the school. Write a letter to and/or interview a performer or theater employee.
- invite family members and friends who sing and play instruments professionally or work in the music industry to speak, perform, record, or demonstrate at a “Career Day.”
- go online and research the most unusual or unexpected jobs in the music industry. Contact a person in that profession for an interview or biography.
- develop 10 questions to ask a person in the music industry about jobs other than performing.

“Music expresses that which cannot be said and on which it is impossible to be silent.” *Victor Hugo*

**A complete musical education will result in a lifelong relationship with music in one or all of the following capacities:**

- Professional
- Avocational
- Consumer-related



## “Yonder Come Day” : Arranged by Judith Cook Tucker, World Music Press

The Georgia Sea Islands are lush former plantation lands that dot the coastline of Georgia and the Carolinas. These islands (John, James, Wadmalaw, St. Simon’s, and many others) were the first stop for many African slave ships making their way to the Northern American mainland, thus establishing a dominant African-American culture. Unique traditions flourished. Dances reflected the structure and nuances of the African musical culture, and diet was similar to that of coastal West Africa. A regional dialect—Gullah—developed that blended African and American characteristics; it is still spoken there today. During the American Civil War, the majority

of white residents moved permanently to the mainland. Following the war, freed slaves formed quiet communities tucked throughout the abandoned plantation lands.

Music of the Sea Islands includes spirituals, blues, call-and-response songs, field hollers, work chants, and singing games and stories. The Georgia Sea Island Singers (begun in the early 1920s by Lydia Parrish) preserved and shared much of the musical heritage of the islands.

### Suggested Resources

Sheehan, Patrician Campbell, Ellen McCullough-Brabson, and Judith Cook Tucker. *Roots and Branches*. World Music Press, 1994.

“Yonder Come Day” performance notes.

Bessie Jones and the Sea Islands Singers. *So Glad I’m Here*. Recording. Rounder, 1974.

Bessie Jones and the Sea Islands Singer. *Step It Down*. Recording. Rounder, 1979.

### Music Making

#### Narrative:

Musical techniques evident in Georgia Sea Island songs include use of blues notes, slides, and vocal percussive elements, as well as body slaps, foot stomps, tambourines, and poly-rhythmic clapping. In this arrangement of “Yonder Come Day,” Judith Cook Tucker has no instrumental accompaniment, although an improvised piano part is not out of character. Look for the “blues notes” and “slurs” in measure 4 of the main melody. Pick a key comfortable for your choir (e.g., Eb for elementary voices). Go for an easy unforced sound, and listen for the harmonies (show in solfeggio). Observe all rests as rhythmic breaths. For the speech ensemble, give Part 2 a very strong rhythm, with a very clear speaking voice in Part 1; let Part 3 flow underneath. If movement is used, it should be easy and “laid back.” Keep the idea of the Gullah sound (e.g., yonder as yonduh) throughout.

Sing “blues scales” for a warm-up; try this with syncopation. For support with the harmonies, sing scales in thirds, and do two-part solfeggio.

#### Assessment Tool:

Students identify and demonstrate correlations between warm-up intervals, syncopations, blue-notes, and specific passages in the song.

### Music Literacy

#### Narrative:

Vocabulary: blues notes, vocal slurs, harmonic thirds, repetition, syncopation, ritard, da capo al fine, a capella

#### Assessment Tool:

Students define vocabulary terms in their own language and demonstrate usage, where applicable.

### Making Connections

#### Narrative:

Investigate and compare Georgia Sea Islands culture in the 1800s with what it is today. Gather photos, ideas, local maps, etc. Find out what music is prevalent there today.

#### Assessment Tool:

Students identify and explain text-based connections to slavery in America.

### Community and Cultural Resources

#### Narrative:

Find songs that come out of your (students’ and teachers’) individual culture that are indigenous to your sound. Listen to folk songs of other cultures; create harmonies with these songs. Visit the Black History Museum.

#### Assessment Tool:

Students describe ways in which “Yonder Come Day” is emblematic of Gullah culture and its people.

### Careers and Lifelong Learning

#### Narrative:

Investigate where the Georgia Sea Island Singers are today. Investigate other singing/instrumental groups that perpetuate their own culture’s music.

#### Assessment Tool:

Students describe the work of ethnomusicologists, composers, and arrangers.







# 8th Grade Music Making

## Benchmark:

### Students integrate elements of music and notation through performance.

#### Students will be able to:

- sing or play a melody with simple harmonic accompaniment.
- read and perform sophisticated rhythmic phrases.
- demonstrate knowledge of musical elements, such as dynamics, tempo, and articulation through performance.



#### In addition to Core Music Indicators, if studying Vocal Music, students also will be able to:

- produce a proper tone quality with attention to breathing and vowel/consonant sounds.
- increase vocal range from B-flat to F2.
- understand and show sensitivity to the changing voice.

#### In addition to Core Music Indicators, if studying Instrumental Music, students also will be able to:

- produce a secure and expressive tone.
- hear and adjust intonation.
- tune their instruments with accuracy.

## Benchmark:

### Students express themselves as musicians through performance, improvisation, and composition.

#### Students will be able to:

- display a range of emotions playing traditional and non-traditional instruments and singing.
- compose and perform a piece of music in response to a powerful personal or musical experience.
- improvise rhythmic and melodic patterns within specific structures.

#### In addition to Core Music Indicators, if studying Vocal Music, students also will be able to:

- perform repertoire in multiple languages using proper diction, inflection, tone quality, articulation, breathing, and posture.
- improvise on a melody.

#### In addition to Core Music Indicators, if studying Instrumental Music, students also will be able to:

- perform repertoire with accurate stylistic interpretation.
- improvise in various keys using arpeggios within given chord structures.
- create simple compositions utilizing melody within a specific key.



#### A complete music-making experience includes opportunities for:

- Hands-on and interactive learning
- Self-expression
- Reflection



# 8th Grade Music Making

Benchmark:

**Students build and apply vocal and instrumental technique to interpret music.**

**Students will be able to:**

- perform a wide repertoire of music with attention to performance practice, breath control, posture, and tone quality.
- demonstrate an understanding of conducting gestures while leading and performing in an ensemble.
- make musical choices that incorporate knowledge of musical styles and genres.

**In addition to Core Music Indicators, if studying Vocal Music, students also will be able to:**

- make musical choices that incorporate knowledge of vocal styles and genres.

**In addition to Core Music Indicators, if studying Instrumental Music, students also will be able to:**

- make musical choices that incorporate knowledge of instrumental styles and genres.

Benchmark:

**Students develop leadership skills by sharing performance, ensemble, and classroom responsibilities.**

**Students will be able to:**

- maintain a musical library, equipment, and portfolio of their own work over time.

Benchmark:

**Students model classroom music-making procedures and behaviors.**

**Students will be able to:**

- assume various roles in music performances, presentations, and collaborations.



“A song has a few rights the same as ordinary citizens ... if it happens to feel like flying where humans cannot fly ... to scale mountains that are not there, who shall stop it?”  
Charles Ives

### Core Music Learning Opportunities

#### Have students:

- learn and perform a varied repertoire, such as: “La Borinquena” (Astol Artes), “It Don’t Mean a Thing” (Mills, Ellington), “Samba Lele” (arr. D. Alfonso Jr.), “Lift Every Voice and Sing” (J. Johnson).
- create rhythmic accompaniments for learned song repertoire using their bodies and playing a variety of classroom instruments
- dramatize a scene from a musical play such as *West Side Story* using voice and instruments and drawing attention to the relationship between movement/gesture and music.
- write a poem and musical underscoring to express their emotional reaction to pivotal events in history.
- select a type of cadence in the style of a drum line, a response to an African call rhythm, or a Brazilian batucada to improvise and perform.
- learn a traditional Latin clave part (e.g., 2&3, 3&2) and apply it to an African Highlife piece. Explore what is stylistically correct by singing, playing, conducting, and moving to the selection.
- create a musical narrative using mythology of a specific culture.
- produce and perform a concert for a lower-grade assembly.

### Vocal Music Learning Opportunities

#### In addition to Core Learning Opportunities, have students:

- sing and perform a mixed-meter piece—such as “Jesu, Joy of Man’s Desiring” by J. S. Bach, arranged by B. Treharne (NYSSMA Level III)—with proper rhythmic accuracy.
- research and present an oral and written description of the vocal mechanism.
- learn, sing, and perform familiar songs—such as the Zulu piece “Siyahamba” (NYSSMA Level III)—with attention to details of pronunciation, tonal quality, interpretation, and blend.
- create and perform an obbligato above “Amazing Grace,” arranged by Francisco Nunez (NYSSMA Level II).
- watch conductor in vocal warm-up for specific responses to gestures (e.g., breath control, note values, sustained tones, chord building, vowel changes, and articulation).
- work towards producing a cantabile legato singing style using “Simple Gifts,” setting by Aaron Copland.
- choose and direct scale-based warm-ups in solfege.

### Instrumental Music Learning Opportunities

#### In addition to Core Learning Opportunities, have students:

- explore the stylistically correct phrasing and articulation in the Hopak from Mussorgksy’s *The Fair at Sorochinsk* through discussion and application.
- choose and lead scale-based warm-up related to repertoire being studied in class. Explore what is stylistically correct for phrasing and articulation in a repertoire selection (e.g., “Fantasy on an Irish Air”) through discussion and its application. Choose and lead scale- and arpeggio-based warm-ups.



Modest Mussorgksy



Aaron Copland



J.S. Bach

A complete music-making experience includes opportunities for:

- Hands-on and interactive learning
- Self-expression
- Reflection

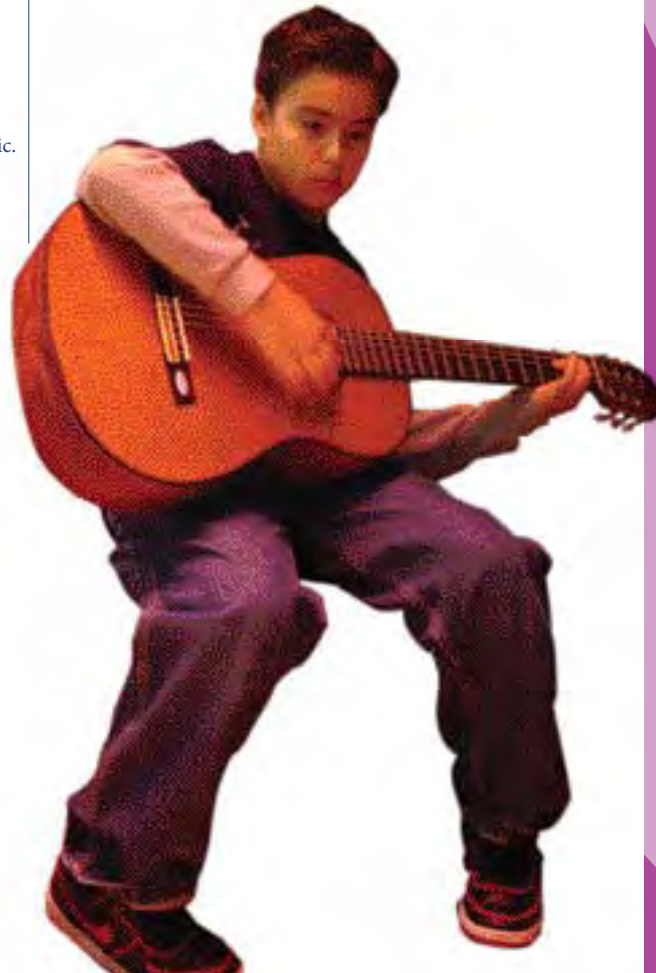


Benchmark:

**Students develop fluency in music in the following areas:**

Elements, Notation, and Vocabulary	Genre and Style	Instruments, Voices, and Ensembles	Production and Technology
<p><b>Students will be able to:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ apply elements of music to analyze repertoire.</li> <li>■ integrate notation and elements of music.</li> <li>■ define syncopation and beat syncopated rhythm patterns.</li> <li>■ describe and analyze musical forms such as binary, ternary, and rondo in diverse genres.</li> <li>■ identify and beat hemiolas* in 3/4 or 6/8, and compound meters such as 5/4.</li> <li>■ recognize, identify, and notate the pitches of the treble and bass staves.</li> <li>■ compose, notate, and perform an eight-measure piece using traditional notation.</li> <li>■ read and perform—singing and playing on pitched instruments—diatonic melodies with rhythmic values that include whole, half, quarter, and eighth rests.</li> </ul>	<p><b>Students will be able to:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ articulate an understanding of the origins and importance of musical styles and instruments of various cultures.</li> <li>■ analyze repertoire for expressive qualities.</li> <li>■ use specific music terminology in observations of how composers use dynamics, range, rhythm, instrumentation, etc. to achieve a musical effect in selected repertoire.</li> <li>■ reflect on their emotional response to a variety of traditional and non-traditional genres of music.</li> <li>■ interpret score markings and vocabulary.</li> <li>■ describe how score markings and vocabulary contribute to a musically expressive performance.</li> <li>■ identify forms in musical literature such as “Theme and Variations Overture.”</li> </ul>	<p><b>Students will be able to:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ identify the correlative relationships among voices, instruments, and ensembles, and their impact on repertoire.</li> </ul>	<p><b>Students will be able to:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ integrate production language and process.</li> <li>■ use their knowledge of music production, tools, and audience expectations to participate in a variety of musical events in their school and community.</li> <li>■ use music technology tools to notate music.</li> <li>■ use music technology to create music.</li> </ul>

\*hemiola: a rhythmic alteration of two musical notes in the place of three, or of three notes in place of two



“The pleasure we obtain from music comes from counting, but counting unconsciously. Music is nothing but unconscious arithmetic.” *Gottfried Wilhelm Leibniz*

**A complete education in music develops the ability to use and understand the language of music through:**

- **Listening and responding to live and recorded repertoire**
- **Notation, recording, and music technology**
- **Description, analysis, and evaluation**

**Benchmark:**

**Students develop fluency in music.**

**In addition to Core Music Indicators, if studying Vocal Music, students also will be able to:**

- sing appropriate dynamics, tempo, and articulation for a particular genre.
- follow a unison, two-part, and three-part vocal score.
- sing a vocal part on a treble clef.
- recognize, notate, and perform complex rhythms.
- recognize intervallic relationships and sing the melody.
- analyze form in writing and discussion using musical vocabulary. Distinguish ABA, da capo (“from the beginning”), and repeat signs in unison and two-part songs.
- make corrections in vocal quality (breath support, vowel production, and articulation).
- sight-read 4- to 8-measure phrases from NYSSMA Level II.
- use music vocabulary (timbre, resonance, vocal placement).
- refine personal vocal performance.
- connect text and music to dramatic purpose.
- express text through personal experience.

**In addition to Core Music Indicators, if studying Instrumental Music, students also will be able to:**

- recognize and perform the following rhythmic notation and time signatures: dotted quarter followed by an eighth note; sixteenth notes and rests; dotted eighth and sixteenth notes; eighth-note triplet; eighth-note/quarter-note/eighth-note syncopation; 2/2 meter (cut time); 6/8 meter.
- recognize abbreviated notation (flat, sharp, natural, fermata, crescendo/decrescendo).
- identify basic terminology: tempo (allegretto, adagio, presto, andantino); dynamics (mp, mf, sfz, pp, ff, fp, diminuendo); accelerando, poco a poco, rallentando, con moto, coda, caesura, alla breve, arpeggio, ledger lines, extended rests, Major/minor, meno, divisi, tutti, solo/soli; articulations and stylistic devices (accent, marcato, tenuto, cantabile, maestoso, dolce, espressivo, con spirito); phrasing (rise/fall, climax).
- recognize both treble and bass clefs (alto strings).
- recognize and perform correct whole-/half-step pattern for Major scale.
- sight-read 4- to 8-measure phrases from NYSSMA Level II.
- analyze composition structures: march, waltz, program music, theme and variation, chorale, rondo, eight-bar blues, twelve-bar blues.
- critique individual and group performance in writing and discussion: self-correction (intonation, balance, blend, tonal quality, rhythmic accuracy, dynamics); group correction (balance, blend, articulations, intonation, tonal quality, dynamics, rhythmic accuracy).
- make personal connections: compare possible mood intended by composer with personal reflection; compare tempi, dynamics, and articulations between different performances.
- examine traditional and non-traditional instrumental repertoire and analyze it for form and style, using terms such as binary/ternary/rondo, homophonic and polyphonic, unison, and counterpoint.
- read and perform complex rhythmic patterns.
- identify visually all chromatic pitches on the treble and bass clefs.
- compare two pieces performed by different instrumental soloists, listening for differences and similarities.



**A complete education in music develops the ability to use and understand the language of music through:**

- **Listening and responding to live and recorded repertoire**
- **Notation, recording, and music technology**
- **Description, analysis, and evaluation**



## Core Music Learning Opportunities

### Have students:

- create listening maps to diagram form, thematic development, orchestration, and dynamics in varied pieces of music.
- listen to a New Orleans-style jazz funeral march and move to the music. Discuss its expressive qualities, making reference to funeral marches in other cultures.
- listen to a jazz ensemble piece such as “It Don’t Mean a Thing” (Mills, Ellington) and write a short story or create artwork based upon the feelings and images the music inspires.
- follow a musical score and notice how music symbols and vocabulary are notated. These include: dynamics (pp, crescendo, ff), rhythm (note values, rests, time signatures), pitch (following a melodic line), tempo markings (allegro, adagio).

### Vocal Music Learning Opportunity

#### In addition to Core Learning Opportunities, have students:

- listen to the folk song “Shenandoah,” and write a private journal entry describing feelings evoked by the music. Share a recording or performance of a song from a particular culture that evokes a similar personal response.
- compare at least two different settings of the same text in a choral work. Discuss specific similarities and differences in repertoire, such as: “Ave Maria” (Schubert, Byrd, others), “Still Nacht”/“Silent Night” (Gruber; German and English versions), “Anvil Chorus” (Verdi; Italian and English versions), “Toreador Song” (Bizet; French and English versions).

### Instrumental Music Learning Opportunity

#### In addition to Core Learning Opportunities, have students:

- listen to a Latin jazz band and move freely or dance to the music. Listen to and perform “Aztec Dance.” Discuss personal responses and images evoked by the music. Distinguish between beat/pulse, meter, and rhythm; apply the distinctions in discussing “Aztec Dance.”
- compare a jazz song performed by two different soloists— such as “Cherokee” (R. Noble) by Charlie Parker, Ella Fitzgerald, Wynton Marsalis, or others—listening for differences and similarities in “musical voice.”
- listen to live or recorded performances of classic works, such as the “Finale” from “1812 Overture” (Tchaikovsky) and Suites for Cello Solo (J. S. Bach), and describe the music using music vocabulary, such as polyphonic/homophonic, staccato/legato, Major/minor, and other terms discussed in class.



A complete education in music develops the ability to use and understand the language of music through:

- Listening and responding to live and recorded repertoire
- Notation, recording, and music technology
- Description, analysis, and evaluation

Charlie Parker



Wynton Marsalis



Ella Fitzgerald



Duke Ellington



# 8th Grade Making Connections

Benchmark:

**Students identify connections between information and processes across disciplines.**

Students will be able to:

- demonstrate awareness of the ways in which music information, resources, and tools may be accessed.

Benchmark:

**Students analyze and describe how music develops in a cultural and historical context.**

Students will be able to:

- recognize and identify performers and repertoire representative of a variety of styles and genres.
- establish connections between popular current musical styles and their societal underpinnings.

Benchmark:

**Students articulate connections between music and their own emerging identities.**

Students will be able to:

- describe their responses to music from a variety of styles, genres, and cultures.

## Core Music Learning Opportunities

Have students:

- prepare a unit of study on the use of a chosen music software program. Lead students through the application and assign a specific creative outcome for small-group or individual completion.
- discuss the emergence of the disc jockey (DJ) as an artist.
- lead a research project that draws parallels between a culture's geography, natural resources, climate, ancestry, and its music—past and present.
- create a “Top 10 list” of favorite performers, repertoire representative of classical, world, jazz, and popular music styles and genres. Each item should be supported by a written explanation containing music vocabulary, where appropriate.
- create ongoing listening log listing composers, performers, descriptions, and responses to repertoire.
- prepare an historical timeline reflecting world, national, state, or municipal events and their corresponding musical components.



“Are we not formed,  
as notes of music are,  
For one another,  
though dissimilar?”

*Percy Bysshe Shelley*

**A complete musical experience is enriched by making connections:**

- Recognizing parallels between music and other disciplines
- Gaining an understanding of the cultural and historical context of music
- Exploring personal connections with music



## 8th Grade Community and Cultural Resources

### Benchmark:

**Students differentiate among and categorize types of music-making institutions in the world.**

#### Students will be able to:

- deepen and broaden performance, composition, or research activities by collaborating with music professionals.
- use Internet and library research techniques to solve musical problems.

### Benchmark:

**Students prepare and become informed about live performances that they will attend.**

#### Students will be able to:

- compare and contrast the sound of live and recorded music.
- compare and contrast the environments in which live and recorded music take place.
- choose a high school music program that is appropriate for them.

### Benchmark:

**Students make decisions about utilizing cultural resources.**

#### Students will be able to:

- differentiate between professional and student performances.
- distinguish between musical genres.
- recognize levels of technical expertise.
- recognize artistry by comparing artists' performances with composers' intentions.

### Core Music Learning Opportunities

#### Have students:

- work with teaching artists to develop musical skills and self-expression by making personal connections to music. For example:
  - » an instrumental ensemble performing in-school concerts and engaging students in reflecting on the repertoire heard
  - » a visiting artist in learning about and attending a concert presented by a New York City cultural organization
  - » a singer assisting the choral director by providing opportunities for sectionals and voice-building
  - » a composer sharing his or her process as a means of inspiring creativity and deepening students' musical perceptions
- work in small groups to collaborate with cultural resources in their neighborhood—including libraries, cultural arts schools, afterschool programs, musicians, and performance venues—to deepen students' understanding of how these resources can advance lifelong learning in music.



“Country music is three chords and the truth.” Harlan Howard

**A complete musical education includes establishing relationships among:**

- The classroom
- New York City
- The global cultural community



**Benchmark:**

**Students apply knowledge of various aspects/options of lifelong music involvement.**

**Students will be able to:**

- use musical production techniques, musical instruments, technical equipment, online resources, and audience expectations to participate in a variety of musical events in their school and community.
- demonstrate understanding of the distinctions among the professional musician, the avocational music maker, and the music consumer.

**Core Music Learning Opportunities**

**Have students:**

- list equipment needed for a pop concert.
- view a video of a Grammy Awards performance and identify ways instruments and voices are used.
- do a group project such as staging a music video. Assign each student a role. Discuss and reflect on the collaborative process.
- perform in local senior centers, interacting with residents about their careers.
- attend performances to recognize their potential as musicians or music lovers.



“Music is an outburst of the soul.”  
*Frederick Delius*

**A complete musical education will result in a lifelong relationship with music in one or all of the following capacities:**

- Professional
- Avocational
- Consumer-related



## “I Got Rhythm” by George Gershwin and Ira Gershwin, Arranged for Concert Band by Michael Story

### Performance Notes

Accessible keys for all beginning band students (Eb and F Major); piece does not cross the register break for clarinets; octave range for trumpets from notated middle C to the C above middle C.

Although this piece was originally a Broadway show tune and employed a straight eighth-note feel, it was frequently performed by pop vocalists and jazz instrumentalists who performed it with a swing feel. Students may be taught to perform the piece in both styles.

### Music Making

Use this selection to develop and reinforce proper breathing, production of good tone, pitch accuracy, application of various articulation techniques, music reading, common time, the keys of Eb and F Major, knowledge of form and the characteristic performance style of the period, and balance in ensemble performance. Warm-ups begin with the performance of a concert Eb Major scale, using long-tones in common time to foster tone development. Heed intonation. Play long-tone scale again, this time including the concepts of crescendo and decrescendo. Pacing of these dynamic changes may be determined and presented orally by the conductor prior to performance, or the conductor may “surprise” the ensemble with such dynamic changes at will, communicating through gesture alone. This will help students learn to watch the conductor for cues. (The same type of “surprises” may include fermatas and tempo changes, e.g., ritardando.)

Next, have students play the scale using accents; continue with long tones, or alter note values. Specify where accents should be placed. Repeat scale, using staccato articulation in specified places. Subsequent scale performance may include either a single tone (value determined by conductor) or a rhythmic figure on each scale degree. Apply concepts to the warm-up that will appear in the band arrangement. Accents, staccato articulation, and dynamic variation may be applied to the scale.

The same should be done in concert F Major, either prior to working on the F Major section of this selection or following the above Eb Major procedure.

When learning this song, students should be encouraged to improvise, compose, and perform their own melodies, using these key signatures.

### Composition and Improvisation:

- Introduce AABA form.
- Encourage improvisation by having students alter the rhythm, embellish the melody, and use grace notes, slides, short runs, etc. If advanced, encourage students to utilize “rhythm changes” (to be addressed later) in their improvisation, composition, and performance. In order to make improvisation “doable” for students, it is recommended that teachers begin with the A section of “rhythm changes.”
- Use additional musical activities to enhance students’ experience with “I Got Rhythm.” Singing, for example, is highly beneficial for instrumental students. Singing parts on neutral syllables or solfege syllables fosters clear performance of inner harmonies and improved intonation.

### Music Literacy

This repertoire selection will help students improve their music reading skills by:

- associating note names with note placement on the staff and with fingerings/positions on their instruments.
- associating note names with fingerings/positions on their instruments; reading whole, half, dotted half, and quarter notes and rests and pairs of eighth notes in common time.
- recognizing and observing accented and staccato articulations; executing changes in dynamics; recognizing and observing the key signature and mid selection key change.
- recognizing and correctly performing accidentals; holding a fermata until the conductor cuts off; following the conductor to achieve molto ritardando. “Moveable” do solfege syllables will help introduce students to harmonic function. Singing note names (possibly while fingering instruments) helps strengthen students’ awareness of key signatures and also reinforces general music reading skills.

Through this selection, students will improve their aural capacities by becoming aware of and recognizing the function(s) of different instruments in the ensemble, (e.g., melody, harmony creates fullness, bass line creates motion).

### Suggested Resources

Furia, Philip. *Ira Gershwin: The Art of the Lyricist*. Oxford University Press, USA, 1996.

Pollack, Howard. *George Gershwin: His Life and Work*. University of California Press, 2006.

Southern, Eileen. *The Music of Black Americans*. 3d ed. New York: W. W. Norton, 1997.

### Making Connections

George Gershwin, composer of this selection, and Ira Gershwin, its lyricist, grew up in Brooklyn, the sons of immigrant parents. The brothers worked in Tin Pan Alley as composers of popular and commercial music. (Tin Pan Alley was an area around Broadway in Manhattan where many songwriters and composers worked. It was a mecca of musical ideas.)

In Tin Pan Alley, the Gershwins wrote music for theatrical productions. Their music eventually melded the European and African-American musical traditions, and was, in turn, adopted by performers of all styles of music. George Gershwin’s music also blended African-American stylistic features with symphonic music. *Rhapsody in Blue* and *Porgy and Bess*, an opera written with Ira, exemplify this blending.

While discussing 20th century American history and its music-history parallels (including the history of jazz and the history of African-American music), students listen to various recordings of “I Got Rhythm” and other selections written by the Gershwins.

(Note: There is a New York City public school named after George Gershwin that is located in Brooklyn.)

### Community and Cultural Resources

- Inform students of the permanent Gershwin exhibits in the Library of Congress, Washington, D.C., and the Performing Arts Center, Los Angeles.
- Attend a performance in which a Gershwin composition is performed.
- Listen to NYC Public Library recordings of George Gershwin’s music performed by various artists.
- Schedule a school recital of several Gershwin selections, performed by a visiting musician or music-teaching artist.

### Careers and Lifelong Learning

- Discuss the composer’s job.
- Develop students’ awareness of the variety of compositions and how they differ (e.g., program music/absolute music, Broadway musical/opera, oratorio/film score music).
- Discuss roles of the composer, lyricist, and possible approaches to their collaborative work.
- Listen to recordings of “I Got Rhythm” from different decades, and discuss how the recordings differ. Discuss the use of time as a barometer of musical quality.
- Discuss the ways in which various societal advancements have affected instrument production, recording technology, and popular tastes.







# 12th Grade Music Making

## Benchmark:

### Students synthesize elements of music, notation, and performance practice.

#### Students will be able to:

- recognize form and structure through playing traditional and non-traditional instruments and/or singing.
- develop polyrhythmic compositions using instruments, tapping, or clapping.
- perform and master repertoire with attention to dynamics, tempo, articulation, and phrasing.

#### In addition to Core Music Indicators, if studying Vocal Music, students also will be able to:

- adapt their performance to the requirements of a variety of vocal ensembles.
- perform at sight a piece with accurate tempo, balance, dynamics, expression, articulation, and intonation.
- sing in tune.

#### In addition to Core Music Indicators, if studying Instrumental Music, students also will be able to:

- adapt their performance to the requirements of a variety of instrumental ensembles.
- perform at sight a piece with accurate tempo, balance, dynamics, expression, articulation, and intonation.
- tune their instruments with accuracy.

## Benchmark:

### Students emerge as artists through performance, improvisation, and composition.

#### Students will be able to:

- perform repertoire with authentic interpretation with regard to style and expression.
- arrange or compose and perform a piece based on any genre, with authentic interpretation regarding style and expression.
- create musical structure and improvise within it.

#### In addition to Core Music Indicators, if studying Vocal Music, students also will be able to:

- improvise while performing folk songs, pop tunes, jazz pieces, and spirituals

#### In addition to Core Music Indicators, if studying Instrumental Music, students also will be able to:

- improvise in various keys with chord substitutions.

## Benchmark:

### Students integrate vocal and instrumental technique, artistry, historical context, and performance practice.

#### Students will be able to:

- make musical choices through the exploration of voices and instruments.
- apply conducting gestures while singing, playing, and moving.

#### In addition to Core Music Indicators, if studying Vocal Music, students also will be able to:

- create assessment tools to evaluate and make improvements in vocal technique.

#### In addition to Core Music Indicators, if studying Instrumental Music, students also will be able to:

- create assessment tools to evaluate and make improvements in instrumental technique.



#### A complete music-making experience includes opportunities for:

- Hands-on and interactive learning
- Self-expression
- Reflection

“Truly to sing, that is a different breath.” Rainer Maria Rilke



Benchmark:

**Students assume leadership roles specific to performance, ensemble, and classroom.**

**Students will be able to:**

- determine musical goals, process, and outcomes for specific repertoire and/or organizing performances.
- utilize instruments and technology to create and present original work.

Benchmark:

**Students create and critique ensemble music-making procedures and behaviors.**

**Students will be able to:**

- create assessment tools to evaluate presentations.



“The notes I handle no better than many pianists. But the pauses between the notes—ah, that is where the art resides!”

Artur Schnabel

### Core Music Learning Opportunities

#### Have students:

- select a piece learned in class and create an arrangement, changing it to a genre of the student's choice. Using the body, voice, and classroom instruments, the student will perform his or her arrangement and show expression and style appropriate to that genre.
- construct a 12-bar blues—including lyrics that are sensitive to the meaning and feeling of the text—that shows an understanding of the harmonic construction and rhyme scheme of a blues song.
- select a poem to create a composition using music software.
- discuss qualities of a good presentation and create a rubric for classroom use.
- pick a particular genre, such as Dixieland jazz, and have students, in small groups, write a short story about a particular piece and present it to the class in the form of a one-act play.
- choose a popular song from a world culture or American R&B/folk/theater genres (e.g., “Ray’s Rockhouse” by Ray Charles, “Times They Are A-Changin’” by Bob Dylan, “Bui-Doi” from *Miss Saigon*), and sing and perform with attention to musical expression, style, performance practice, breathing, posture, tone, and quality.
- create a rhythmic accompaniment for an 8- to 16-bar ABA/AABB repeated cadence using percussion instruments like djembe, talking drums, shekeres, gongokui, clave, dumbek, conga, bongos, etc.

### Vocal Music Learning Opportunities

#### In addition to Core Learning Opportunities, have students:

- perform a composition such as “O Vos Omnes” by Pablo Casals, making musical choices that result in authentic interpretation.
- select a NYSSMA Level IV composition (e.g., “Sine Nomine” by Ralph Vaughan Williams) to sight-read.
- improvise over melodic line in pieces such as “Tuxedo Junction” (Hawkins, Feyne), arranged by Jerry Nowak, (NYSSMA Level IV) or “All Is Fair in Love” by Stevie Wonder.

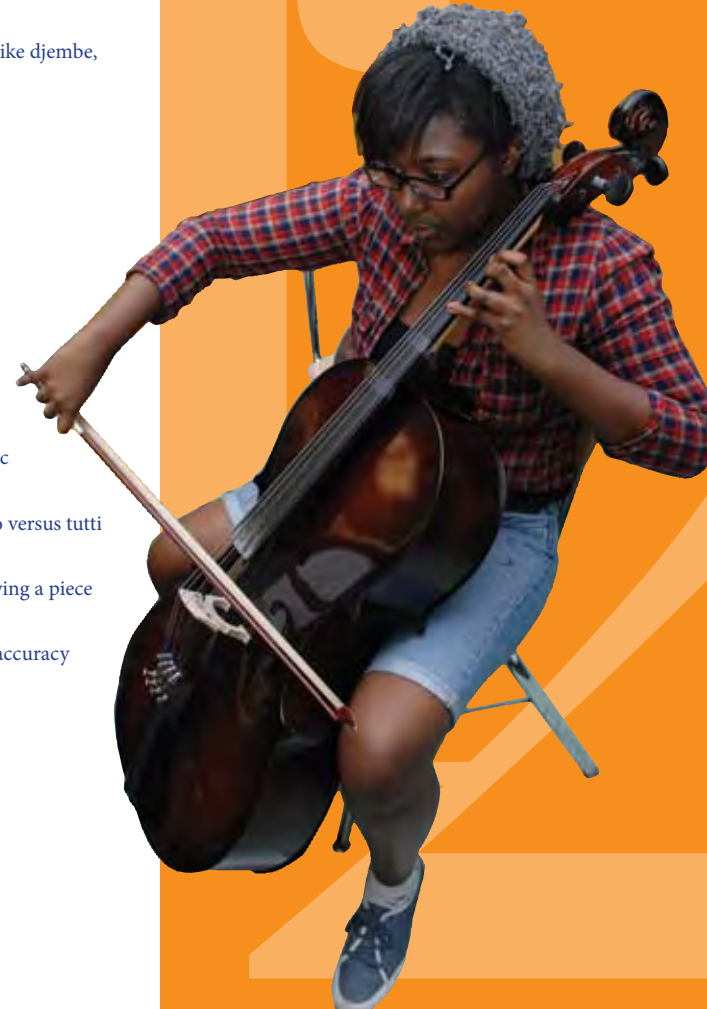
### Instrumental Music Learning Opportunities

#### In addition to Core Learning Opportunities, have students:

- play “Brandenburg” Concerto No. 3 by J. S. Bach. Perform the first time through, ignoring all dynamic and stylistic markings. For the second time through, have students execute dynamic and stylistic markings as written.
- conduct rehearsals of “Brandenburg” Concerto No. 3 with appropriate gestures for the dynamic contrasts and solo versus tutti sections.
- demonstrate and articulate the preferred placement of the bow for the “Brandenburg” and how it differs from playing a piece such as Mozart’s “Eine Kleine Nachtmusik.”
- listen to different sections of the ensemble perform a designated passage. Students identify fluctuating degrees of accuracy and establish a rubric for the absence of accuracy versus the presence of accuracy and articulation.
- determine how the use of accurate articulation can affect the musicality and spirit of a march.

A complete music-making experience includes opportunities for:

Hands-on and interactive learning  
Self-expression  
Reflection



**Benchmark:**

**Students develop expertise in music in the following areas:**

Elements, Notation, and Vocabulary	Genre and Style	Instruments, Voices, and Ensembles	Production and Technology
<p><b>Students will be able to:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ evaluate repertoire using the language of music.</li> <li>■ notate what they hear.</li> <li>■ read and sight-sing diatonic melodies with a variety of rhythmic values.</li> <li>■ recognize, identify, and notate the pitches of the treble and bass staves, and become familiar with other clefs.</li> <li>■ listen to live or recorded performances of different music (e.g., jazz and classical), compare and describe using vocabulary such as: polyphonic and homophonic, staccato and legato, Major and minor.</li> </ul>	<p><b>Students will be able to:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ evaluate repertoire for expressive qualities.</li> <li>■ use specific music terminology to describe how composers use dynamics, range, rhythm, instrumentation, etc. to achieve a musical effect in a selected repertoire.</li> <li>■ perform and discuss music with attention to forms, such as: binary, ternary, rondo, and popular song in verse.</li> <li>■ verbalize—either orally or in writing—a detailed emotional response to a variety of traditional and non-traditional genres of music.</li> <li>■ describe similarities and differences in the way diverse composers utilize musical elements.</li> <li>■ describe origins and importance of musical styles and instruments of various cultures.</li> <li>■ articulate personal connections and responses using appropriate musical terminology after performing and listening to a variety of musical repertoires.</li> </ul>	<p><b>Students will be able to:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ analyze how voices and instruments are used in repertoire.</li> <li>■ create an original composition, combining voices and instruments.</li> </ul>	<p><b>Students will be able to:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ plan and produce performance events.</li> <li>■ participate in key roles in a variety of musical events in their school and community.</li> <li>■ use music technology tools to read, write, and analyze music.</li> <li>■ create and perform an original piece of music that employs standard notation using composition software.</li> </ul>

“Music and silence combine strongly because music is done with silence, and silence is full of music.” *Marcel Marceau*

**A complete education in music develops the ability to use and understand the language of music through:**

- Listening and responding to live and recorded repertoire
- Notation, recording, and music technology
- Description, analysis, and evaluation



Benchmark:

**Students develop expertise in music.**

**In addition to Core Music Indicators, if studying Vocal Music, students also will be able to:**

- integrate vocal technique and musicianship in performance.
- read a contemporary score with traditional and non-traditional or inverted markings.
- read and perform mixed meter scores.
- change score markings according to direction.
- recognize, notate, and perform complex rhythms with dependable accuracy.
- demonstrate proficiency sight-reading complex rhythms and melodies.
- analyze form in writing and discussion using musical vocabulary.
- distinguish between song styles: aria, art, folk, jazz, musical theater, and popular.
- critique performance quality in writing and discussion: make corrections in vocal quality (breath, articulation, tone), improve use of vocabulary (tempo, dynamics, pitch, timbre), and refine performance.
- make personal connections in writing and discussion: connect text and music to dramatic purpose, express text through personal experience, and identify how tone color changes interpretation.

**In addition to Core Music Indicators, if studying Instrumental Music, students also will be able to:**

- understand and describe the meaning of symbols and music vocabulary (dynamics, rhythm, pitch, tempo markings, articulation) encountered while following a score of a work from their instrumental repertoire.
- compare and contrast different versions of a melody that they read and perform.
- identify all Major and minor key signatures.
- read and understand a variety of time signatures in compound and simple meters.
- articulate personal connections and responses, using appropriate musical terminology, after performing and listening to instrumental repertoire.
- recognize and perform the following rhythms and time signatures: quarter-note triplet, 5/4, 6/4, 5/8, 7/8, 9/8, 12/8.
- recognize abbreviated notation.
- identify basic terminology and tempo markings: tempo (vivo, lento, vivace, grave, largo, larghetto); dynamics (ppp, fff, pppp, ffff); articulations and stylistic devices (rubato, tenuto, piu mosso, meno mosso, stringendo, morendo, attacca, senza, subito, glissando, tranquillo, alla marcia, grandioso, sostenuto, pesante, brillante, appassionato, leggiero, semplice, sempre, scherzando, giocoso portamento, staccato, slur, segue); general (transposition/transpose, tacet, interval, phrase, cadence).
- analyze composition structures: chorale prelude, overture, national forms (polka, bolero, etc.), suite, ballad/air, sonata-allegro, fugue, fantasy, toccata, concerto, and chaconne/passacaglia.
- critique individual and group performance in writing and discussion.
- make personal connections: compare personal interpretation with the composer's intention; compare tempi, dynamics, articulations, stylistic devices, and phrasing between pieces and performances.



**A complete education in music develops the ability to use and understand the language of music through:**

- **Listening and responding to live and recorded repertoire**
- **Notation, recording, and music technology**
- **Description, analysis, and evaluation**





### Core Music Learning Opportunities

#### Have students:

- describe, using appropriate musical vocabulary, the similarities and differences between two genres of music, such as opera and musical theater, e.g., *La Boheme* (Puccini) and *Rent* (Larson), or *Madame Butterfly* (Puccini) and *Miss Saigon* (Boublil/Schonberg). Discussion might include: setting of text, use of spoken word, vocal range, and musical representation of characters.
- keep a listening log—to develop critical listening skills and fluency in music vocabulary— of music by varied composers such as Ludwig van Beethoven, Charlie Parker, Duke Ellington, and Aaron Copland, among others. Discuss and write about ways diverse composers use the elements of music.

### Vocal Music Learning Opportunities

#### In addition to Core Learning Opportunities, have students:

- listen to recordings of “Georgia on My Mind” (Carmichael, Gorrell) performed by various artists. Discuss the feelings they evoke. Sing this song and discuss how the recorded versions impact the expressiveness of the performed version.
- follow all parts in a choral score being rehearsed. Be aware of rhythm, phrasing, and entrances of all voice parts.
- use computer software to reinforce the sight-singing skills being developed in rehearsal.
- listen to performances of choral ensembles (live or recorded) with attention to details such as: tone quality, sense of ensemble, voicing, articulation, phrasing, breath, expression of the text, range or tessitura, and artistry. Discuss and/or write a response.

### Instrumental Music Learning Opportunities

#### In addition to Core Learning Opportunities, have students:

- compare and contrast recordings of instrumental works such as Beethoven’s Seventh Symphony by similar ensembles.
- follow the score of an instrumental arrangement such as “I’ve Got Rhythm” Variations for Orchestra (music by George Gershwin). Demonstrate understanding of the symbols and vocabulary of music notation that influence instrumentalists, such as dynamics (pp, crescendo, ff), rhythm (note values, rests, time signatures), pitch (following a melodic line), tempo markings (allegro, adagio), and articulation (legato, staccato).
- correctly identify elements such as instrumentation, clefs, texture, and key.
- decode a score, using appropriate vocabulary to describe events in the music, such as: “There is a crescendo in the second system, measure 3, in the flute part.”

A complete education in music develops the ability to use and understand the language of music through:

- Listening and responding to live and recorded repertoire
- Notation, recording, and music technology
- Description, analysis, and evaluation





# 12th Grade Making Connections

**Benchmark:**

**Students demonstrate an understanding of correlations to music's role in society in a variety of contexts.**

**Students will be able to:**

- identify corresponding elements within representations of music, visual arts, dance, and architecture, such as form, color, texture.
- integrate multiple bodies of knowledge to demonstrate how they relate to one another (e.g., Shakespeare and Mendelssohn, or Picasso and Stravinsky).

**Benchmark:**

**Students demonstrate an understanding of the ways in which musical elements, artistic development, and processes interrelate.**

**Students will be able to:**

- articulate the impact of a performance using appropriate, specific vocabulary and language.

**Benchmark:**

**Students creatively express their personal connections to a wide variety of musical styles.**

**Students will be able to:**

- identify and classify a variety of musical styles and genres with supportive explanations of how they are distinct from one another.

## Core Music Learning Opportunities

**Have students:**

- develop a multi-arts project involving a museum exhibition, a dance performance, and appropriate, related musical selections. For example, schedule a class trip to the Museum of Modern Art to view Jacob Lawrence's *Migration Series*. Follow with DVD viewing of the Alvin Ailey Dance Company performing *Revelations*.
- discuss the impact of Southern migration on New York City and other urban cities, and have students sing the spirituals "Wade in the Water" and "Rock-A-My-Soul" with added percussion accompaniment.
- discuss the ways in which *Revelations'* characters may relate to Jacob Lawrence's subjects, and how the music is a bridge between them.
- prepare oral and written critiques of artistic experiences and opportunities. Critiques will utilize language appropriate to the art form, and each will describe, assess, and provide personal responses to the artistic experiences.
- research, prepare, and deliver an oral class presentation on the history, culture, geography, politics, music history, and state of the arts of a specific country. Students may incorporate a variety of multi-sensory experiences in the presentation. Food, music, dress, instruments, geographic location of a country, etc. will be addressed in the presentation.

Revelations  
Alvin Ailey  
American Dance Theater



“Rock music in its lyrics often talks ahead of the time about what’s going on in the country.” Edmund G. Brown

**A complete musical experience is enriched by making connections:**

- Recognizing parallels between music and other disciplines
- Gaining an understanding of the cultural and historical context of music
- Exploring personal connections with music

**Benchmark:**

**Students develop awareness of issues that shape and affect various musical communications in the world.**

**Students will be able to:**

- debate methods of musical distribution. Discuss how musical forms and cultural elements are appropriated in the creation of contemporary music. Debate the ethics of these practices.
- critique a guest artist's presentation.

**Benchmark:**

**Students select cultural opportunities as informed consumers or participants.**

**Students will be able to:**

- identify immediate and long-term musical interests.
- select appropriate community resources to fulfill these interests.
- justify their listening choices.

**Benchmark:**

**Students express informed opinions.**

**Students will be able to:**

- evaluate exemplary performances.
- discriminate between artistic and technical excellence.
- defend their critique of music selections.

## Core Music Learning Opportunities

**Have students:**

- work with the music teacher and teaching artists to develop their personal musical “voice.” For example:
  - » an instrumentalist providing opportunities for sectionals, master classes, and workshops
  - » a musician whose skills complement those of the music teacher offering particular needed expertise
  - » a singer working with individuals to develop solo repertoire
  - » a jazz musician facilitating a students’ workshop on improvisation or scat singing
  - » a composer helping facilitate the composition and performance of a new piece for small or large ensemble
- consult local listings of cultural events in the community and throughout the city. Utilize resources such as free concerts, student rush tickets, open rehearsals, and online listings to find opportunities.
- recognize and model high standards of musical performance.
- visit exemplary college/university programs and share findings with younger students.
- collaborate research, production, and performance utilizing the resources within the arts community of New York City.

“The joy of music should never be interrupted by a commercial.” Leonard Bernstein

**A complete musical education includes establishing relationships among:**

- The classroom
- New York City
- The global cultural community



**Benchmark:**

**Students demonstrate lifelong music involvement.**

**Students will be able to:**

- participate in a variety of musical events in their school and community.
- forecast the role music will play in their lives.

**Core Music Learning Opportunities**

**Have students:**

- create a musical production company to produce a holiday or spring concert. Assume any of the following roles and discuss the qualities needed to carry them out successfully: producer, stage manager, disc jockey, marketing director, program developer, costume designer, set designer, set builder, performer.
- research occupations in the music industry. Include job descriptions and salary ranges in the research.
- research, in collaboration with the guidance counselor, opportunities for internships and summer jobs in the New York City cultural and arts business community.
- perform with friends in their own music groups, participating in school talent shows and fund-raising events.
- play in the high school marching band.



“You are the music while the music lasts.”  
*T. S. Eliot*

**A complete musical education will result in a lifelong relationship with music in one or all of the following capacities:**

- Professional
- Avocational
- Consumer-related

## “Alleluia”: Composed by Randall Thompson, Arranged for Symphonic Band by Arthur Greenberg

### Performance Notes

To many music lovers, the name Randall Thompson brings to mind the lofty sounds of his most famous anthem, based on the single word “alleluia.”

Serge Koussevitsky and the trustees of the Boston Symphony Orchestra commissioned the work, originally written for four part chorus of unaccompanied mixed voices, for the opening exercises of the new Berkshire Music Center at Tanglewood. *Alleluia* premiered under the direction of Professor G. Wallace Woodworth on July 8, 1940.

### Suggested Resources

Forbes, Elliot. “Randall Thompson: Brief life of a choral composer: 1899-1984.” *Harvard Magazine*, July-August 1991, Vol. 103, No. 6

<http://harvardmagazine.com/2001/07/randall-thompson.html>

ECS Publishing: Composer Pages: Randall Thompson

[www.ecspublishing.com/compThompsonBio.html](http://www.ecspublishing.com/compThompsonBio.html)

### Music Making

This arrangement can be used as an opportunity to introduce a well known choral work to instrumentalists. The constant development of melody through counterpoint, modulations, and the minimal use of words—there is nothing more to the libretto than “Alleluia” and a final “Amen”—will keep the music interesting. For the premiere in 1940, the conductor told his chorus that “learning the text was not going to be a problem!”

This work can be used to develop and reinforce such skills as breath support, good tone production and pitch, sectional and ensemble playing, musical expression and artistry, and phrasing to approximate the human voice in performance.

Be sure to listen to a good recording of the Thompson *Alleluia* in the classroom. Note the musical qualities that the choir exhibits, including clear diction, musical phrasing, good blend, and intonation. Your students should consider how they could achieve these same qualities as instrumentalists.

The musical phrasing of the piece should be based on the proper inflection of the words. Students should improvise short, original melodies based on the word “alleluia.” Other words, such as “amen,” or even brief sentences can be used to inspire the creation of original melodies. After students have created new phrases, revisit Thompson’s interpretation. Students will likely have a new appreciation of his masterful setting.

- Take care when phrasing.
- Stay together.
- Sectional/ensemble work is very important.
- Pay close attention to breath marks.
- The tempo is *lento*!
- Watch intonation.
- Employ dynamic markings.

### Music Literacy

Introduce other works that are based upon an Alleluia or Halleluiah. The NYSSMA Manual contains references to these examples: *Alleluia and Fugue* by Alan Hovanes; *Air and Alleluia* by W. A. Mozart, arranged for band by John Kinyon; *Gloria and Alleluia* by Camille Saint-Saens, arranged for band by Fred Hubbell; *Joyous Alleluias* by Jared Spears; and *Choral and Alleluia* by Howard Hanson.

While listening to these other works based on an Alleluia, compare the various styles of the composers. Listen to a few Alleluias from different musical periods and encourage students to note the differences among these musical styles.

- Use warm-ups and scales to introduce sharp keys.
- Practice playing in and around the key of D Major (A Major, F Major).
- Discuss how time signature changes can add interest.
- Introduce new time signatures in the piece.

### Making Connections

When Thompson composed *Alleluia*, France had just fallen to the Nazis. The anthem’s tempo mark, *lento*, was very important to the composer. As he later explained: “The music in my particular Alleluia cannot be made to sound joyous. ... here it is comparable to the Book of Job, where it is written, ‘The Lord gave and the Lord has taken away. Blessed be the name of the Lord.’ ”

Yet, the piece uses D Major as its tonal center. Music historians and people who understand the significance of tonality know that D Major is the key of royalty, the key of the trumpets, the key of the glorious ruler and victor. The events in Europe deeply affected Thompson. Did his use of D Major silently express his belief that the Allies would be victorious in World War II?

### Community and Cultural Resources

Since its premiere in 1940, Thompson’s *Alleluia* has been heard in church services, choral concerts, and academic ceremonies such as Harvard’s commencement exercises. The word is derived from the Hebrew *hallelujah*—a thankful cry. It is found in some form in all religions, usually followed with “Amen,” which literally means “so be it.” Amen is said or sung at the end of a prayer or hymn to affirm its content.

Attend a performance of a choral group in the New York City area. Find an ensemble that is performing a vocal Alleluia, if possible. Invite a visiting teaching artist or musician to work with your students.

Since this is originally a vocal work, a professional singer might visit your rehearsal to demonstrate good vocal production. Students can also sing their parts—with the aid of instruction—to improve their instrumental tone quality when playing. A visiting instrumentalist might also be helpful, to provide sectional instruction.

A guest teaching artist may be invited to assist your students in developing original compositions based on the word “alleluia.” Conclude the project with a public sharing of their compositional work. Document the work with scores, recordings, and pictures.

### Careers and Lifelong Learning

This piece is an excellent example of a commissioned work. The composer accepted the assignment offered by Serge Koussevitsky and the Boston Symphony Orchestra trustees, and in five days he created this famous work. The process—from pen to performance—included the composer, a publisher, musicians, and a conductor. In addition, this composition’s universal appeal—its melodies are heard in many forums, both liturgical and secular—has rendered it a classic throughout the world.



## The Music Studio as Dedicated or Shared Instructional Space

### Introduction

A successful music program is one that maximizes available resources to ensure student learning and performance at the highest possible levels. Among the arts, music is distinguished by its three instructional areas of focus: core (formerly “general”), choral, and instrumental music. Though each has area-specific requirements, all share the goals, objectives, and best practices that are integral to exemplary instruction and desired student outcomes.

The recommendations below will enable each school or campus to create an environment in which the delivery of music instruction can be offered at the highest level possible. These recommendations apply to all grades.

### Physical Requirements for a Choral Music Studio:

- Tuned, acoustic piano with lock
- Choral risers
- Armless, moveable chairs
- Shelving, cabinet space for storage of choral archives
- Shelving for daily storage of choral folders
- Ample, widely spaced electrical outlets
- Dedicated overhead projector; recording (DVD, VCR, CD) equipment
- Projection screen
- Dry erase board
- Library of print, video, and recorded materials
- Ample lighting, ventilation
- Secure, locked space for electronic equipment

### Physical Requirements for an Instrumental Music Studio:

- Electric keyboard or acoustic piano with lock
- Armless, moveable chairs
- Shelving, appropriate encasements for instrument storage
- Shelving for daily storage of instrumental folders
- Dedicated overhead projector; recording (DVD, VCR, CD) equipment

- Projection screen
- Dry erase board
- Library of print, video, and recorded materials
- Ample lighting, ventilation
- Secure, locked space for electronic equipment
- Music stands appropriate to class size
- Adequate space for the development of correct playing posture

### Physical Requirements for a Core Music Classroom:

- Electric keyboard or acoustic piano with lock
- Storage space for class sets of general music textbooks
- Dedicated overhead projector; recording (DVD, VCR, CD) equipment
- Projection screen
- Storage space for class sets of hand-held percussion instruments
- Moveable chairs with writing-arm attachment
- Dry erase board
- Library of print, video, and recorded materials
- Ample lighting, ventilation
- Secure, locked space for electronic equipment

### Recommended Material Resources for the Elementary Core Music Classroom:

- Rhythm band instruments: eight jingle sticks, four triangles, one large drum, one small drum, two pairs of large cymbals, two tambourines, three pairs of sand blocks, two woodblocks, two pairs of finger cymbals, one pair of bongos
- Melodic and harmonic instruments: resonator bells, autoharp, song bells, xylophone, recorder, electric keyboard, acoustic piano
- Songbook series with companion audio class set
- Vinyl posters of the instrument families



### The Music Studio as Dedicated or Shared Instructional Space *continued*

#### **Recommended Material Resources for the Middle and High School Core Music Classroom:**

- Rhythm instruments: claves, large and small drums, maracas, tambourines, castanets, triangles, guiros, bongos
- Melodic and harmonic instruments: xylophone, glockenspiel, autoharp, guitar, keyboard, acoustic piano

The equipment and material resource requirements for the instrumental program exceed those of other areas in the music curriculum. A well-stocked and properly maintained store of instruments and ancillary materials will greatly facilitate student learning and desired musical outcomes.

#### **Recommended Inventory for the Symphonic Orchestral Music Program:**

- 2–3 piccolos (middle, high)
- 1–2 oboes (middle, high)
- 3–5 clarinets
- 1–3 bassoons (middle, high)
- 2–6 French horns (middle, high)
- 3–6 trumpets
- 3–6 trombones
- 1 tuba (middle, high)
- 2–4 percussion
- 12–15 violins
- 5–10 violas
- 4–8 cellos
- 3–4 string basses

#### **Ancillary Resources:**

- Strings, rosin
- Reeds, valve oil
- End-pin stoppers for cellos and basses
- Bass stools (adjustable legs with bottom rim for foot support)

#### **Recommended Inventory for the Instrumental Band Music Program:**

- 2–7 piccolos
- 1–3 oboes
- 12–20 b-flat clarinets
- 1–4 alto clarinets
- 1–4 bass clarinets
- 1–4 bassoons
- 1–2 alto saxophones
- 1–2 tenor saxophones
- 6–12 trumpets
- 3–5 French horns
- 2–3 baritone horns
- 2–6 trombones
- 2–4 tubas
- 3–5 percussion

#### **Ancillary Resources:**

- Reeds, valve oil

#### **Recommended Inventory for the String Orchestra:**

- 12–15 violins
- 5–10 violas
- 4–8 cellos
- 3–4 string basses

#### **Ancillary Resources:**

- Strings, rosin
- End-pin stoppers for cellos and basses
- Bass stools (adjustable legs with bottom rim for foot support)

#### **Recommended Inventory for the Vocal Music Program:**

- Octavos, sheet music: original copies, class set
- Sight-singing, music theory series: class set
- Illustrative posters for Curwen hand signs, vocal physiology, posture
- Video library of exemplary vocal performers
- Discography of major choral repertoire for solo, large, and small ensembles

Effective instruction for English Language Learners (ELLs) embodies the same components found in all purposeful, supportive learning environments: clear objectives, scaffolded learning experiences, differentiated strategies, and opportunities for problem solving and expressive responses.

As every youngster brings areas of strength and need into the classroom, so does the English Language Learner. As in all situations, time and careful planning are needed to uncover what each student knows and has experienced in music.

The less proficient the student is in English, the more essential it is that the teacher provides visual cues and employs strategies such as demonstration and modeling.

The following activities and strategies are appropriate for all students and they will also ensure that the needs of ELLs are met.

## Who is the English Language Learner?

- English Language Learners can exhibit varying degrees of proficiency in listening, speaking, reading, and writing skills. Many have a high level of proficiency in their native language. Still others may not be able to read or write in their native language because of limited or interrupted formal education in their country. Still others may have excellent English language reading and writing skills but have had little opportunity to converse. Finally, there is a population of ELLs who have been identified as having special needs and are receiving special education services.
- All English Language Learners can participate in classroom activities regardless of their English language proficiency. They can respond by pointing to words or images, or express themselves in short phrases. As their acquisition of English progresses, so will the quality of their responses. They can contribute to small-group activities by using their native language; they can easily participate in a non-language-based activity.
- English Language Learners have much to offer in the music class. The richness of their culture and language can and should be utilized to enhance and contribute to other students' learning.

## Promoting Understanding

- Enunciate clearly and speak in a natural rhythm and tone of voice to foster comprehension.
- Label instruments and musical supplies and equipment to connect spoken and written word.
- Construct lessons that integrate and reinforce concepts and vocabulary.
- Present information, restate the question and explain the task in a different way to assure understanding.
- Use posters, charts, pictures, and symbols to provide visual cues.

## Building Confidence and Encouraging Participation

- Respond positively to students, even if the answer is incorrect. Responses like “That’s an interesting way to look at it” or “Let’s hear what other students think” will encourage students to continue participating.
- Create learning activities that involve the English Language Learner’s native language and culture. Encourage students to take the lead in presenting and demonstrating what they know and can do.
- Provide a comfort level for students by pairing them to foster participation, critical thinking, and creativity.
- Assign group presentations in which students perform, vocalize, and share their creative work.
- Pair students to share answers, perspectives, and opinions.
- Enlist peer partners to translate at the beginning and end of an activity.

## Developing Literacy in Music

- Rephrase and retell. Describe and explain new concepts in several different ways.
- Ask students to rephrase and retell to check for comprehension.
- Use vocabulary and symbol charts to reinforce vocabulary.
- Create a visually rich and stimulating environment; have music books, posters, magazines, and pictures available for student use.
- Provide access to dual-language and picture dictionaries in the music classroom.
- Encourage students to say words/musical terms in their native language.
- Create word walls of music terms.
- Highlight cognates and roots of words, where appropriate. For example, Romance language speakers may recognize and quickly grasp the meaning of words like *rhythm (ritimo)*, *guitar (guitarra)*, *melody (melodia)*, *theme (tema)*, *quartet (cuarteto)*, *interval (intervalo)*, etc.
- Make accountable talk an expectation in the class.
- Model reflective responses to encourage student self-assessment.
- Generate language by asking students to compare and contrast two musical selections.
- Invite students to respond to musical works that are integrated into other art forms.
- Incorporate opportunities for reading aloud into units of study and daily lesson plans.
- Encourage note-taking and the compilation of listening logs.

There is no greater lively art than music for bringing out the learning potential in a student. The content of the *Blueprint for Teaching and Learning in Music* provides a flexible core to give every New York City child a developmentally appropriate arts education.

It is helpful to keep in mind that each student learns in a unique way and therefore instructional adaptations should be included in each lesson so that all students, with or without special needs, may participate and learn to his or her fullest capacity.

The range of special needs includes students with behavioral challenges; students with autism and developmental disabilities; attention deficit disorder with/without hyperactivity; students with physical, orthopedic, or other health impairments; students with speech/language impairments; students with hearing impairments; students with vision impairments; students with emotional difficulties; and students who are talented and gifted. Since not every child has an Individualized Education Program, the following suggestions can be helpful in optimizing conceptual learning in music and the creative arts. The following suggestions will work in inclusion settings or in a center-based special education setting.

## **Instructional strategies and modifications to promote learning**

- Use highly structured activities with clear expectations.
- Communicate in short sentences, using simple vocabulary.
- Pace instruction so that children are neither left behind nor bored.
- Provide immediate feedback and positive reinforcement.
- Recognize appropriate behavior by providing immediate praise.
- Provide constructive suggestions to correct inappropriate behavior.
- Establish rules and consequences for inappropriate behaviors.
- Model positive attitudes—be that which you want your students to become.

## **Instructional strategies for students with emotional and behavioral challenges**

- Plan and implement age-appropriate, content-rich, multi-faceted, evenly paced lessons.
- Maintain consistency in instructional and behavioral expectations.
- Provide prior notification of changes in routines, whenever possible.
- Acknowledge students' adaptiveness to change with positive reinforcement.
- Modify the environment to minimize distractions. Distribute and collect instruments for each distinct activity.
- Reinforce positive behaviors and responses with specific, immediate feedback.
- Acknowledge students' needs at all times.
- Post classroom rules clearly for easy reference.
- Create a designated place for constructive breaks from class activities.

- Vary musical repertoire to help create a focused sound environment for optimum student expression.
- Implement Glasser's Choice Theory: Plan to interweave students' physical and psychological needs to belong, gain power, have fun, and be free in the classroom.<sup>1</sup>
- Plan time for exploration and improvisation.

## **Instructional strategies for students with cognitive or developmental challenges**

- Elicit imitative and modeling responses.
- Use visual prompts to initiate responses.
- Prioritize responses to maintain classroom decorum.
- Foster students' sense of personal security in seating assignments.
- Develop students' concept of "self" by praising all accomplishments.
- Break tasks into small steps, giving directions both orally and in writing.
- Describe and explain new concepts in several different ways, using short sentences and simple language.
- Ask students to rephrase and retell to assess comprehension.
- Provide extended time for the completion of class work, tests, or large projects, as needed.
- Allow students with listening challenges to borrow notes from a peer; or provide students with an outline of the lesson.
- Allow students with writing challenges to use a computer with specialized software to check spelling, grammar, and recognize speech.

## **Instructional strategies for students with attention deficits**

- Teach and reinforce social skills through repertoire and group music making.
- Define and reinforce appropriate behaviors and expectations on an ongoing basis.
- Embed assessments for student learning and understanding throughout the lesson.
- Enumerate and articulate benefits of completing tasks.
- Embed information into students' short-term memory by providing frequent rehearsals.
- Mark music scores clearly with clues to aid recall.
- Post the rehearsal plan.
- Repeat realistic expectations in each session.
- Teach repertoire that enhances character development and self-esteem.
- Explain 21st century relevance.
- Be informed as to whether student receives medication to increase his or her capacity to regulate impulsive responses. Plan student participation accordingly.
- Adhere to established classroom and behavioral structures so that students with attention deficits may increase their ability to demonstrate "first/then" sequences.
- Provide immediate feedback and praise for achievement and desired behavior.

### **Instructional strategies for students with orthopedic or other physical challenges**

- Consult a physical or occupational therapist when planning use of classroom space. Ensure accessibility for entering and exiting classroom and performance spaces.
- Create music-making opportunities that will strengthen motor skills and build students' reduced or limited strength. (This may be done in consultation with assigned occupational and physical therapists who have students' designated Individualized Education Program goals.)
- Adapt musical instruments with materials such as Velcro, elastic, foam padding, texturized rubber grips and handles in various sizes and shapes, etc. to enhance students' ability to play.

### **Instructional strategies for students with speech and language challenges**

- Use microphone to encourage verbal responses.
- Employ movement activities to build cognitive understanding of music concepts and develop language capacity.
- Utilize visual and aural prompts to initiate responses.
- Modify range of response choices to increase clarity and encourage participation.
- Model and provide examples of desired forms of response.

### **Instructional strategies for students with hearing challenges**

- Place students near the primary sound source.
- Use an amplifier—such as a personal amplification system, FM system, or a hearing aid—for students with moderate hearing loss.
- Incorporate software to create visualizations of rhythmic patterns.
- Utilize a variety of percussive instruments to enhance rhythmic vibrations.
- Use lighted keyboard to display melodic, harmonic, and rhythmic inputs.

### **Instructional strategies for students with visual challenges**

- Use enlarged print, where possible.
- Use highly contrasted colors for paper and written text.
- Use Braille printer and Braille translation software (so that teacher can read assignments).
- Use tactile props.
- Add audio enhancement for visual directions.
- Provide sequential learning opportunities to enhance memory.
- Monitor safety. Maintain classrooms that allow easy movement throughout the room and that are free of clutter.

Twice-exceptional students<sup>2</sup> are characterized as being gifted and talented in conjunction with being cognitively, behaviorally, physically, or perceptively challenged.

Effective teaching practices engage students intellectually and embed targeted applications specific to their needs with constructive, discipline-based practices. Each learning strand in the *Blueprint for Teaching and Learning in Music* supports the other, and also provides stimulating, spiraled challenges for gifted and talented students.

For links to special education issues and changes in special education law, see updates at [www.nysed.gov/vesid](http://www.nysed.gov/vesid) (Office of Vocational and Educational Services for Individuals with Disabilities).

### **References**

1. Glasser, W. *Stations of the Mind*. New York: Harper & Row, 1982.
  2. NEA: National Education Association. *The Twice-Exceptional Dilemma*. Washington, D.C.: National Education Association, 2006.
- Sobol, E. S. *An Attitude and Approach for Teaching Music to Special Learners*. Raleigh, NC: Pentland Press, USA, 2001.



There are many things to consider when working with older beginners. The differences in learning styles, interests, emotional development, and physical capabilities between younger and older students demand a curriculum suited to their age. It is important to help older beginners progress quickly and achieve a level of musicality that will engage and entice them to continue with their instruction.

In a high school core music class there will likely be a mix of older beginners and students who have been playing or singing since early- to mid-elementary school. Older beginners vary in their background knowledge of music. Some have had music education in or outside of school, or have participated in a wide variety of arts programs without playing an instrument or singing, while others have had limited to no musical experience.

Differentiated instruction, an approach to teaching and learning for students of differing abilities in the same class, is especially effective in teaching music to older beginners. To differentiate instruction is to recognize students' varying background knowledge, learning styles, and interests, and to react accordingly.

Instructional strategies that will support the older beginner include:

- selecting appropriate repertoire that will challenge all aspects of musicianship.
- choosing rhythmically sophisticated repertoire built upon repeated riffs and melodic patterns (e.g., “Mambo Inn,” “Picadillo,” “Manteca,” “C Jam Blues,” “So What”).
- layering complex melodic lines over basic parts.
- providing sheet music so that students continue to develop music literacy skills by identifying pitches, and playing and singing along, associating rhythmic patterns with sound.
- setting ambitious, achievable goals and focus upon student outcomes.
- encouraging peer mentorship; having students collaborate on the completion of assignments; and providing hand-outs of printed diagrams and clearly-written instructions.
- supplementing beginning methods book repertoire with play-along CD accompaniments; having students improvise simple rhythmic and melodic patterns in real time; and providing challenging exercises and playing them quickly as a warm-up.
- structuring lessons so that students are given opportunities to move, perform, critique, and respond.
- creating enjoyable musical contests that challenge students' ability to think and play simultaneously.
- providing frequent performance opportunities during and outside of school time.
- collaborating with other theater, dance, and visual arts disciplines in the school.
- seating beginners next to experienced music students.
- modeling good musicianship by performing with the ensemble.
- inviting professional musicians to collaborate with students
- encouraging students to attend professional performances and listen to quality recordings.
- teaching students how to practice; modeling correct technique and the skill of playing at a slow tempo.
- emphasizing the importance of playing correctly without reinforcing mistakes.
- creating an instructional atmosphere that fosters discipline and a sense of ownership.

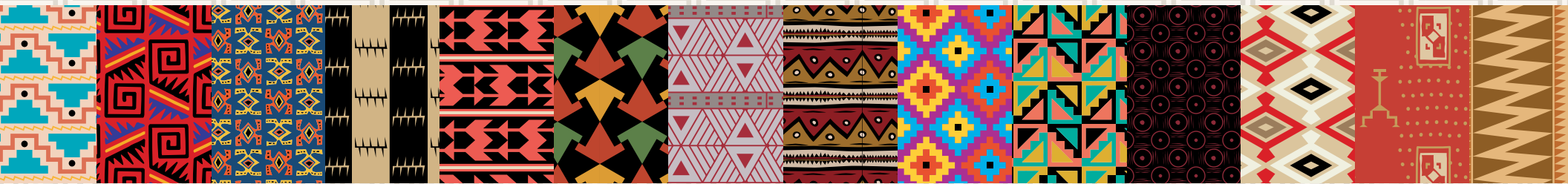








# Brief Histories of Music



## Introduction

The following histories of music were prepared by John Schaefer of WNYC and originally appeared in *Music from the Inside Out: A Resource Guide for Music Teachers*. Mr. Schaefer's radio broadcasts are noted for their varied programming with particular focus on the discovery of new music and trends in music all over the world.

This historical overview is written in such a way that, without any changes, sections can be given as assigned reading to your students.

We hope that this comprehensive overview of music will encourage music educators to learn about, become curious about, and utilize examples of all styles of music in their work with their students.

## Native Music

The United States is a country built largely of immigrants. But as you probably know, there were people here before the Europeans began moving in. Native Americans lived throughout North and South America, and they had their own culture and their own music. To the English and French settlers who first came to North America, the music of the so-called American Indians was primitive and not worth saving. In the process of claiming the land for their own, the settlers succeeded in destroying a lot of native culture.

This unhappy story has been repeated in several other parts of the world. In South America, in Australia, and in the northernmost parts of Europe and Asia, native cultures and native musical styles have suffered from waves of immigration and persecution. But music is a hard thing to kill, and echoes of much older cultures can still be heard in the native music of these areas. Looking at the music of the Native Americans, or the Australian aborigines (pronounced ah-boe-RIDGE-in-nees), or the Sami (SAH-mee) people of Scandinavia, is like looking back in time, to what music might have sounded like thousands of years ago. In fact, some experts claim Australian aboriginal culture goes back 50,000 years, so let's begin there.

*Didgeridoo, right; Bilma, below*



### Aboriginal music.

The word “aboriginal” means something that was there from the beginning. The Native Americans or

American Indians should be referred to as aboriginal Americans, because they were the first ones here. But the term is usually used to describe the original inhabitants of Australia. The Australian

aborigines are considered the most ancient culture on earth, and experts think that their music has changed surprisingly little – even though

it goes back to well before the beginning of recorded human history. The most important instrument in aboriginal music is the voice. No surprise there. But singing

in aboriginal culture is not just a way of making music, it's a way of continuing the process of creation. Aboriginal mythology says that the ancestors created the world by singing the land and the animals into existence, leaving behind trails, or “songlines,” that a singer can follow. So the songs of the Australian aborigines often describe the land and the animals around them.

In addition to the voice, the aborigines use two instruments. One is a pair of wooden sticks, called *bilma*, which are clapped together; the other is a long tube called a *didgeridoo*. The didgeridoo is considered a sacred instrument. It is not made by men, but by termites that hollow out a branch of a eucalyptus tree. The instrument can usually create only one basic note, but a player will sing, laugh, bark, and croak through the tube to



mimic the sounds of the landscape he wants to describe. (It's always a “he,” by the way. Women are traditionally not allowed to play the didgeridoo.) Over the centuries, certain sounds have been associated with animals, rock formations, river beds, etc. A good didgeridoo player can tell a story or describe a journey, even though he never uses a single word.

*Ocarina*

### Native Central and South American music.

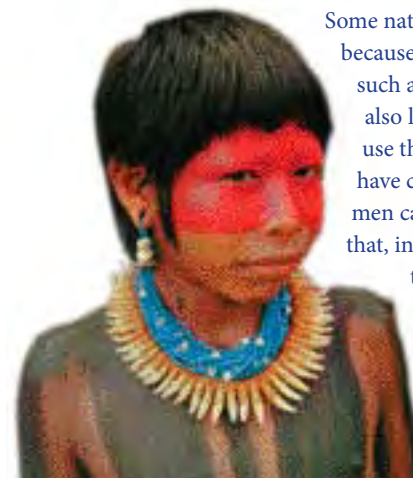
Before the arrival of Columbus and the other Europeans, musicians in Central and South America used a wide variety of flutes and whistles, as well as lots of percussion. Unfortunately, the Spanish destroyed many of the great cultures of the area, such as the Inca empire in the Andes Mountains and the Aztec and Maya cultures in Central America. But some of their instruments have survived, and they show quite a bit of creativity.

Percussion instruments included turtle shells, animal hooves, and smooth rocks picked from dried-up streams. Some of the native flutes were even more inventive. The Mayas, for example, used the *ocarina* – a type of round flute that usually only plays a few notes. To get around that, they would make instruments that were shaped to let them have two or three ocarinas in one. A favorite shape was the snake, where the ocarina would curve back on itself (imagine a letter “s”), and each part of the serpent's body would be able to play a separate set of notes. The snake's head would have two or three holes right next to each other, so that a player could blow into all of the parts at the same time. The Quechua (pronounced KETCH-wah) people, who live high in the Andes mountains, are the descendants of the great Inca empire. Because the Europeans never really got to them they were able to save at least some of their ancestors' instruments. Many of these are flutes. There are probably close to a dozen different types of Quechua flutes, some of them with soft, breathy tones, and others with sharp, piercing sounds that could be heard over long distances in the mountains.



Some native flutes were meant for religious rituals. We know this because there are still some native peoples in South America, such as the Xingu (pronounced SHING-goo) of Brazil, who also live in areas that were hard to reach and they continue to use their instruments the way their ancestors did. The Xingu have chants, and a type of flute that only a certain group of men can play. The sacred flute is such a closely guarded secret that, in the Xingu tradition, a woman who even hears one of these flutes may be killed.

*Xingu boy*



Native Music *continued*

**Native North American music.**

In the United States and Canada, there are actually two different native groups. The so-called American Indians, from the Iroquois nations of the Northeast to the Pueblo and Navajo people of the Southwest, are the ones we usually think of when we say Native American. But in northern Canada and Alaska, the Inuit (pronounced IN-yoo-it) or Eskimo people are also Native Americans. Living in an area where there are few natural resources to make into instruments, the Inuits use drums and voices. The Inuit women have developed one of the strangest singing styles in the world: two women stand facing each other, very close together, and then sing into

*Throat Singers*



each other's mouths. The two singers alternate the notes of the song. One woman will sing the first note, then the other woman will sing the second. Each singer's mouth acts like an echo chamber, and with the two of them rapidly alternating notes, this style of Inuit music can be very tricky to perform. (The pieces are usually quite short, and often end with the singers breaking into laughter.)

Native American music included a rich tradition of chants, often in praise of the earth and the spirits who watched over it. Like their relatives in Central and South America, though, the native North Americans also used flutes, whistles, and drums. In fact, it was sometimes considered just as important to know how to make a flute as to play it. Native Americans

used wood flutes as well as whistles made from eagle bones. Playing the flute was often done as a form of meditation. Drums, on the other hand, were usually played in a group. Drummers could gather around a large powwow drum, or beat a message to a neighboring village on a hollowed log drum. Drums would signal war, or peace, and could accompany most important community occasions.

Today, powwow drumming is done throughout the United States, even though it originally came from the central part of America. Since so much Native American culture has been lost, the various different communities often get together, and you'll find musicians from many parts of the country playing together.

**Sami music.**

The Sami people live in northern Scandinavia and in northern Russia. Their culture is similar to the Inuits of North America, and like the Inuits, they use voices and drums. Most Sami are reindeer herders, and they use a style of singing called joik (pronounced yoik), which can be heard for long distances in the mountains and valleys. They also have long songs that tell stories, or ask for good weather and good health. These are usually sung by a shaman, a type of traditional priest, who often plays a drum as well.

The Sami also use a *jaw harp*, which looks a little bit like a letter G made of metal. The jaw harp is held in front of the lips, and the middle piece (the crossbar of the G) is plucked with a finger. The idea is similar to the Inuit women singing into each other's mouths, except here the jaw harp player uses his own mouth as an echo chamber, and by changing the shape of his mouth, he can change the note as well.

Notice anything about all these forms of native music? They all are used to help people pray or work, as well as play. These were probably the reasons that humans started making music to begin with. These ancient cultures still show how important music was in people's lives in earlier times – not just as entertainment, but as part of their everyday lives. (You'll find this approach in the Music of Africa section, too.)

*Sami*





## Music of Africa

The first humans lived in Africa, so the first music probably happened there too. Maybe that's why African music has had such a deep impact on music from so many parts of the world. If you've already read the sections on Jazz, Latin Music, North American Roots Music, or Western Pop Music, you've seen how African music has affected those styles. Thanks to the spread of American pop music, which is just one of Africa's musical grandchildren, you can hear the African musical influence all over the world.

One of the reasons African music is so strong is that in most African cultures, music is more than simply entertainment. And it isn't just played by musicians. In the African tradition, everyone sings or drums or plays an instrument. And music is a part of every major event in life – birth, marriage, illness, war, death. Just as important, music is traditionally part of the little day-to-day events, too. Storytelling, dancing, washing clothes, making bread, gathering for a hunt – all these things have been done for centuries with music.

In fact, some languages in Central and West Africa didn't even have a word for music. Languages like Douala, spoken in Cameroon, had one word that meant dance and music, and sometimes storytelling too. There was no separate word for music, because music didn't exist as a separate thing. It was a part of everything else. (Now, those languages have a word for music – *musikki*. You can probably tell that it's not an African word – it was borrowed from the Europeans.)

Africa is huge, and each section of Africa has its own way of making music. Each region also uses music in a slightly different way. Northern Africa, from Morocco to Egypt, is really part of the Arabic world; so you can get information on their music in the section called Music of the Middle East. The rest of the continent, sub-Saharan Africa, can be divided into four main parts:

**West Africa.** East Africa may be the cradle of humanity, but West Africa is the birthplace of soul. And rap. And rock, blues, funk, Gospel, reggae, jazz, and Latin music. It all started with the rhythms of West Africa. Forced to go to the Western Hemisphere as slaves, the people of West Africa never lost their strong musical heritage, and their songs and rhythms mixed with European and Native American styles to form the world's most popular styles of music.

West Africa was home to many great civilizations, at least two of which produced sophisticated music that has survived for centuries and remains strong even today. The Ashanti Empire grew out of the much earlier Ghana Empire, and is centered around the country of Ghana. While Europe was deep in its so-called Dark Ages, the Ghana Empire had already developed a very high culture. By the 1700s, when the Ashanti Empire reached its height, the royal courts had large, complex ensembles of drums, bells, and occasionally horns or trumpets. These groups were



Griot

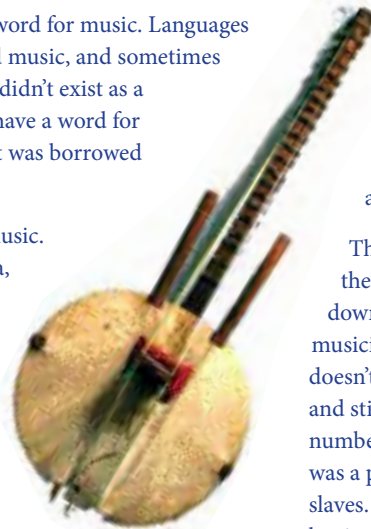
almost like drum orchestras. Instead of a conductor, there was a master drummer, who gave the rhythms, signaled the other drummers, and played the “lead” or solo part. Many different rhythms could be used at the same time, with the different parts weaving in and out. This music still fascinates many musicians today, and even some Classical Music composers have gone to Ghana to study with the master drummers of that area.

The Manding Empire was based in the country of Mali, although at its height, in the 13th century, it included much of western Africa. The Manding loved stories, especially stories about their great kings and warriors. That's where the *griot* (pronounced GREE-oh) came in. The griots were a whole class of musicians who sang and played the *kora*, a type of harp/guitar. The griot was more than a singer. He was a storyteller, a historian, a court jester, and he was the evening newscaster. The griot's job included keeping track of important family trees, celebrating the anniversary of major events, and sharing the latest gossip.

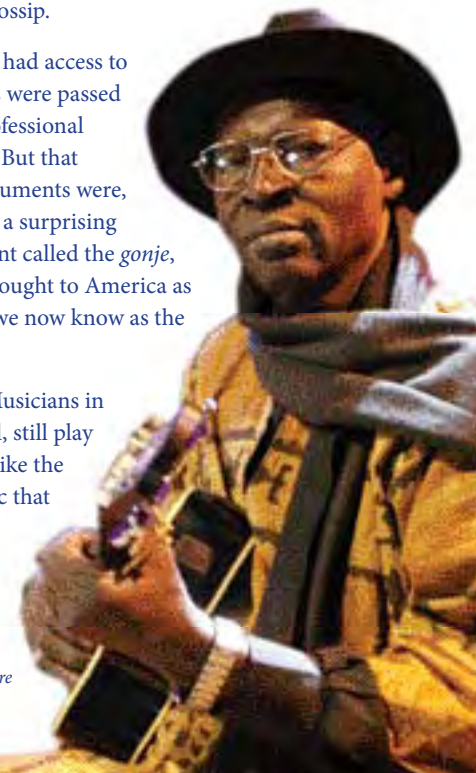
The griots had a certain amount of social status. They had access to the courts of the rich and powerful, and their positions were passed down through the family line. They were, in a sense, professional musicians. And that was a rare thing, especially in Africa. But that doesn't mean they were the only ones making music. Instruments were, and still are, common in Mali and the rest of the area, and a surprising number of them are string instruments. One, an instrument called the *gonje*, was a particular favorite of the West Africans who were brought to America as slaves. Once here, they reinvented the instrument, which we now know as the banjo.

West African music has a real bluesy sound, even today. Musicians in Mali, and in nearby countries such as Gambia and Senegal, still play the kora, but many have discovered the guitar, and some, like the great Ali Farka Toure (pronounced TOO-ray), make music that sounds like old American blues. Some of America's best living blues players have worked with Toure, combining the original sound of the blues with its modern American descendant, and bringing the journey of West African music full circle.

Ali Farka Toure



Kora





Music of Africa *continued*

**Central Africa.** North Americans can find their musical roots in West Africa. South Americans can find many of theirs in Central Africa. The Spanish and Portuguese brought slaves in from the areas around Angola and Congo. The music here is quite different from the music in the West. Drums and drumming are still important, although there are no drum ensembles like the ones in Ghana. Singing is important, too. Like most African music, Central African singing is often done in the “call and response” style – one lead singer does the verses, and the group chants at the end of each verse. (This is how most religious music is done throughout the world.) For many people, though, the most important sound in Central Africa is the music of the pygmies, especially the Ba-Benzele (Bah Ben-ZAY-lay) and Aka people.

The pygmies use a technique called “hocketing” quite a lot. Basically, a hocket is a way of splitting a tune between musicians. Here’s a simple example: you and friend are singing “Happy Birthday.” If you sing “Hap” and your friend sings “py,” and then you sing “Birth” and your friend sings “day,” you’re singing in hocket. (Try it – it’s a lot harder than it sounds.) Singing, drumming, and pipe playing are all done using the hocket technique. This style can be found all over Central Africa, but the Ba-Benzele and Aka groups are particularly good at it. There are even recordings of Aka women standing in a river, smacking the river with their hands in hocket. Depending on how you cup your hands, you can produce different notes, and these women are able to play simple melodies and rhythms without using any “instruments” at all.

**South Africa.** Group singing is common throughout southern Africa, although it’s very different from what you’ll hear in Central Africa. Part of the reason for this is the influence of Christian missionaries, especially in the country of South Africa. The Zulu people already had a strong tradition of choral music when the Christians began to expose them to church hymns, and later, to gospel music. Now, some of Africa’s most famous musicians, like the choir Ladysmith Black Mambazo, tour around the world singing a kind of Zulu gospel music.

The call-and-response format is common all through southern Africa. The lead singer in the call and response is often a musician known as a *sangoma*. The sangoma is a traditional healer, who knows how to use local plants as medicine but also uses music to put people into a trance and drive out their illness or bad spirits. This is actually another very ancient use for music, not just in Africa but around the world. In the southern part of Africa, the sangoma is usually a singer, although he or she can also be a drummer. These days, the few remaining sangomas are not as powerful in their communities as they were in earlier years. Because of the strong influence of Christianity, many are careful not to talk too much about what it means to be a sangoma today.

**East Africa.** There’s a lot going on in East Africa. The influence of Arab seafarers and Indonesian traders can be heard in some of the music in Zanzibar, Tanzania, and Ethiopia. Ethiopia is also home to an ancient form of Christian music – the music of the Coptic Church, which doesn’t sound particularly African at all. But there are a few general things we

can say about East African music. First, the instrument known as the “thumb piano,” which is played all over the continent, may have begun here. This instrument, which is considered sacred in some areas, is made by putting strips of metal on a piece of wood. The wood is held between the hands, and the player’s two thumbs play the metal strips to produce the melody and the rhythm. The wood is sometimes hollow, with dried beans inside that rattle when the metal strips are played. The beans represent the spirits of the ancestors, and the buzzing sound that the instrument makes when all these beans start vibrating inside represents the ancestors singing along. The thumb piano is never played alone – it always accompanies a song, and like the griots of West Africa, the East African thumb piano player is often a storyteller.

East African music also uses quite a number of string instruments, including hand-held harps and fiddles. Europeans brought the guitar to Africa, but Africans somehow turned that into an African string instrument too. That’s true especially in East Africa, where musicians in Kenya developed a unique style of guitar music called “Kenya Dry.” Usually, this music was played on two acoustic guitars, with a third musician playing a soda bottle. Not just any soda bottle, either. It had to be a Fanta bottle. Fanta was (and still is) an orange-flavored soda that comes in glass bottles with ridges on the neck. By rubbing the neck with a stick, the bottle player could produce a very effective set of percussion sounds.

**“Afropop.”** In recent years, of course, the electric guitar has become very popular throughout the continent. Other sounds from the world of rock music have affected African music, too. Each region has developed its own “Afropop” style, and many of the players who make this music, including the famous Senegalese singer Youssou N’Dour (pronounced YOO-soo en-DOOR) and the late South African singer Mahlathini (mah-lah-TEEnee) used the sounds of Western rock to create a new kind of pop music. Now, African musicians grow up with the sounds of Western pop music, and so the traditional sounds of Africa are being combined with the sounds of Africa’s musical descendants. The result is an exciting blend of old and new – and more proof of how strong the music of Africa really is.



Kalimba



Youssou N’Dour

## Middle Eastern Music

Middle Eastern music may sound foreign to most Americans, but in fact it's a close cousin to our own Western music. When European knights went to the Holy Land to fight during the Crusades, they thought they were going to fight a bunch of savages – heathens who didn't worship God the way Christians did, and who therefore probably didn't have much culture. Imagine how surprised they were to find themselves facing an enemy whose art, science, and music was much more sophisticated than their own.

By the 12th century, Europeans had begun to bring some instruments from the Middle East back home. (See Music from Europe.) Over the next couple of centuries, many of the instruments that we are most familiar with grew out of those Middle Eastern roots. The *oud* (also spelled 'ud,' and pronounced OOD) is the father of our guitar. The *kanun*, a type of zither with strings running across a piece of wood, became the European harpsichord, and then evolved into our piano. The *rebec*, or fiddle, was the most revolutionary instrument of all, because its strings weren't plucked – they were bowed. Eventually, our violins, violas, and cellos developed from this instrument. If you think about it, there wouldn't be much left of our Western music if you took out the instruments we developed from the Middle East.

All of these Middle Eastern instruments are still played today. They may have different names in different countries (especially the fiddle, which has close to a dozen names), but they are basically the same instruments. There's also a flute, called the *ney*, which the Europeans didn't adopt, probably because they already had flutes of their own but also because it's very difficult to play. The *ney* is considered a sacred instrument, and playing it can put the player into a state of trance. This brings up one of the most important elements in Middle Eastern music, namely the relationship between music and the religion of Islam, which is dominant throughout the region.

Simply put, music and Islam – at least orthodox Islam – do not go together. This may seem odd to anyone who's ever heard the call to prayer being chanted from the top of a mosque or heard the chanting of the Quran, the Islamic holy book. These chants are incredibly musical, but to the orthodox Muslim, they are not music. They are prayer, and it's more important to get the words right than it is to get the notes right. Aside from this chanting, music is not allowed, and instruments are strictly forbidden.

That's the theory, anyway. In practice, there is music all over the Middle East. Good thing, too, because some of it is very important in people's lives. In fact, many branches of Islam use music as one of their main forms of prayer. There are some places where instruments are not allowed, but even in those places, you'll find people using their imagination to make music. For example, the Bedouins, who wander through the deserts of Saudi Arabia and other parts of the Middle East in huge caravans, have made drums out of old gasoline cans.



Dervishes

Here's a look at some of the main types of music you'll find in the Middle East. With the large Arabic communities living here in New York, you'll find most of these here, too.

**Sufi music.** The word *Sufi* refers to the mystical branch of Islam. You've probably read a lot in the news lately about Islamic fundamentalists – well, the Sufis are the opposite. The list of their saints includes Moses and Jesus Christ, and for them, music is one of the most powerful ways of reaching God. There are many types of Sufis, from Morocco in Africa to Indonesia in eastern Asia, and they all have their own music. All of them, though, have a few things in common. First, the music is not done as entertainment

(although watching and listening to Sufi ceremonies can be very entertaining) – it's a ritual of praying to God. Singing is usually done in the call-and-response form (see "Music of Africa" for more on this), and is very repetitive. It's usually accompanied by drumming, which is also very repetitive.

Don't get the wrong idea, though. Repetitive music doesn't mean it doesn't change. Usually, Sufi music will start slow, and gradually get faster and louder, as the Sufis themselves begin to go into a trance state. This means they have to be able to let go of what's going on around them. That's why the music is so repetitive; it makes it easier for the Sufis to continue the chant or the rhythm even as the ritual gets more ecstatic. One common example of repetition in Sufi music is to chant the names of God over and over, very rhythmically. Usually the music is accompanied by repeating movements as well. The most famous example of this is the whirling of the Mevlevi Dervishes of Turkey, known throughout the world as the Whirling Dervishes. These Sufi men train for years to chant and to whirl, and their accompaniment includes a very elegant group of instruments, almost like a small orchestra.

Middle Eastern Music *continued*

**Arabic Classical music.** Western classical music has been around for perhaps 500 years, but Arabic classical music goes back at least 1,000 years. Like Western classical music, the classical style in the Middle East developed in the courts of the local rulers, and in addition to vocal music, purely instrumental music began to play an important role too. The instruments that the Crusaders brought back to Europe – the oud, the kanun, and the rebec – were classical instruments in the Middle East. Western classical music has forms that composers work with, like the symphony, the sonata, and opera. Middle Eastern classical music also has forms. The big difference is that Western music is usually completely written down; but in the Middle East, improvisation is a very important part of the music. One major Middle Eastern form is the *taksim*, which is like a roadmap for the musician, telling him (or her, since there are some women playing this music now) how to let the improvisation grow.



Classical Arabic music usually begins with the musician introducing the scale that the piece uses; then the rhythm is brought in; and finally, the melody that the player will improvise on. (See the section on “Music of India and Central Asia” – Indian classical music is often created the same way.) The choice of scale is an important decision, especially since Middle Eastern music uses notes that are not found on our pianos or guitars. We have nothing between C and C-sharp, for example, but Arabic singers and musicians will often use a note halfway between C and C-sharp. (Sometimes it’s not exactly halfway between – the exact note will vary from country to country.) Having these extra notes, sometimes called microtones, gives a Middle Eastern musician more opportunities to add a bit of emotion or drama to a performance.

**Contemporary and Popular music.** Walk down Atlantic Avenue in Brooklyn and you’re not likely to hear either Sufi music or even classical music – but you’ll almost certainly hear some of the great popular music of the Arabic world. The greatest artists of them all was the Egyptian singer Oum Kalsoum (there are many spellings of her name, but it’s pronounced Oom KAL-THOOM). Oum Kalsoum started singing as a child, dressing up as a boy to enter singing contests. She started singing religious songs, but soon she was singing popular songs from Egyptian movies (without the disguise). She was so good that eventually she was able to make a career for herself, and from the 1930s to the 1970s, many of the Middle East’s best composers wrote songs for her. Kalsoum’s band included a lot of classical Arabic instruments, but it also included Western violins, and later the electric guitar, keyboards, and Western drums. Kalsoum was able to sing classical melodies, and used a lot of the same microtones that make Arabic classical music so dramatic. But by combining traditional music with the popular sounds of

Egyptian film music (which is where most of the region’s pop hits came from), she and her band created a whole new type of Middle Eastern music. When she died in 1975, the whole country basically shut down for three days while Egyptians mourned.

Middle Eastern pop music now includes a heavy dose of Western pop, rock, and even reggae music. The famous Lebanese singer Fairuz (Fay-ROOZ) uses a big band just as Oum Kalsoum did, but her band has a very Western sound, using symphonic and electric instruments. Even some of the Middle East’s greatest classical singers are also doing more popular songs with large bands. These bands still use traditional Arabic instruments, but those instruments are more for “local color” – the heart of the band is a collection of instruments that most of us would be very familiar with.



Fairuz, above: Oum Kalsoum, left



## Music of India and Central Asia

Quick – what singer has made more records than anyone else? Give up? The answer is not Frank Sinatra, Janet Jackson, Elvis Presley, or even Sean “Puffy” Combs.

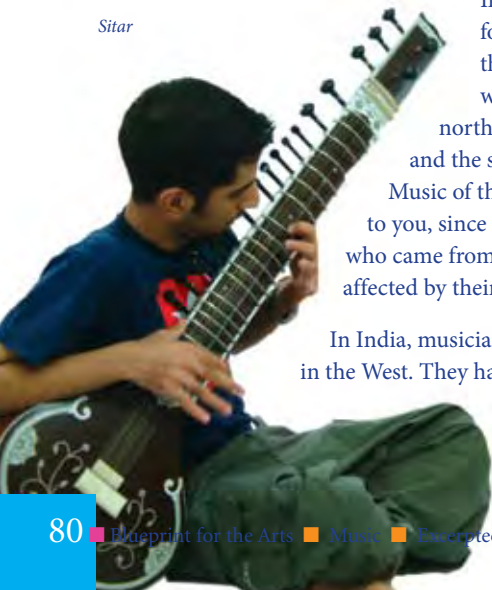
The correct answer is: Lata Mangeshkar. This singer from India (whose last name is pronounced man-GESH-kar), is just one of the surprises you’ll find in this section.

For much of human history, Central Asia was the crossroads of the world. Traders moved people and goods along Central Asia’s famed Silk Road, which connected the Middle East with China. European adventurers like Italy’s Marco Polo made their way to China that way, and cultures and music moved along the Silk Road, too.

Central Asia includes countries such as Tadjikistan and Afghanistan, both along the Silk Road, as well as Mongolia and regions like Tibet (now occupied by China) and Tuva (a Mongolian part of Siberia). All of these places have old and distinctive types of music, but only a few of them have captured the imagination of musicians and listeners in other parts of the world. In Tibet and Tuva, musicians have developed an almost unbelievable way of singing – they can sing two or more notes at the same time. As you can imagine, this is the sort of thing that makes other musicians sit up and pay attention, so even though neither Tibet nor Tuva is an independent country, both have lots of fans in the music world. But we’re getting ahead of ourselves; let’s begin with Central Asia’s most important musical tradition.

**India.** India is like a Disneyland of music. Along with its neighbor Pakistan, India has developed many different types of music, including not one but two classical styles, as well as some of the most popular “pop” music anywhere in the world. Pakistan has also chipped in with a hard-partying type of music that is actually a form of prayer.

Sitar



India and Pakistan are neighbors, but not friends. They’ve fought three wars in the past half century. But culturally, they are closely related. That’s because of the Silk Road, which took merchants and armies through Pakistan and northern India. Both countries use the same instruments and the same scales. In fact, if you’ve read about Arabic scales in *Music of the Middle East*, some of what follows will look familiar to you, since India was ruled for several centuries by the Moguls, who came from Persia in the Middle East. So, Indian scales were greatly affected by their Arabic and Persian counterparts.

In India, musicians don’t just have 12 notes in an octave, the way we do in the West. They have 22, because Indian musicians have up to four ways of playing certain notes. These different versions are called “microtones.” Some scales are supposed to have a sunny, cheerful sound; they might use a slightly higher

version of these notes. Others, meant for late at night, might use a lower version.

Indian classical music is built around the raga. The raga is more than just a scale, it’s also a mood. There are hundreds of ragas, including ragas for all the different times of the day, as well as ragas for the various seasons. Two or more ragas can share the same basic scale, but when one or two of the notes are used in their higher version, it changes the mood completely, and so it becomes a different raga.

Ragas also differ between north and south. In northern India and Pakistan, a raga performance shows the influence of Middle Eastern music. It is almost completely improvised: first the musician introduces the scale, then the rhythm, and finally the melody or melodies that the rest of the improvisation will be based on. This is similar to the Middle Eastern taksim, although a raga is usually much longer. The Mogul Empire didn’t reach into southern India, though, so the southern style is different. All the introductions are very short, and the melodies make up most of the performance. It’s still improvised, but southern Indian musicians use recognizable songs (at least, recognizable to other south Indians) for most of the raga.



If you’ve heard of Ravi Shankar, the famous sitar player who was a big influence on The Beatles, you might think that Indian music is mostly instrumental. The sitar, a long-necked lute, and the *sarod*, a shorter lute, are two of the main instruments, along with the flute. But singing is the heart and soul of all Indian classical music. Musicians who play other instruments are always trying to get their instruments to “sing,” to imitate the voice.

In Indian popular music, there is almost no instrumental music at all. If it doesn’t have singing, it probably won’t be popular. India’s pop songs all come from the Indian film industry, based in Bombay and known by the nickname “Bollywood.” Believe it or not, India has the biggest film industry in the world, even bigger than our own Hollywood. Most of its films are musicals, full of song and dance numbers that become pop hits in India and Pakistan – and all over southern Asia and in places around the world where Indians have moved. The actors and actresses usually don’t sing themselves; they lip sync, the way Western singers do when they’re making music videos. The actual singing is done by a small group of “playback singers.” For most the 1950s, 60s, 70s, and part of the 80s, the greatest of these playback singers was Lata Mangeshkar. As you read earlier, her voice has been recorded more often than anyone else – although her sister, Asha Bhosle (pronounced BOE-slee), is catching up fast. This style of music is called *filmi*, and it usually involves a whole orchestra that mixes Western strings, saxes, guitars, and keyboards with traditional Indian instruments. Since the tunes are supposed to stick in your head and be easy to

Music of India and Central Asia *continued*

hum along with, they usually don't have too many of the "microtones" that classical players use.



Nusrat Fateh Ali Khan

There are other musical traditions in India and Pakistan, too. The original gypsy music comes from India, and is still played there. Lots of folk-music traditions and even a kind of wandering troubadour style can be found in parts of the area. One style that has become popular among rock musicians in recent years is the Pakistani religious music known as *qawwali* (pronounced ka-VALee). It is a kind of Sufi music (see "Music of the Middle East"

for more on the Sufis), and like most Sufi music it is very rhythmic and involves many short, repeated lines. But the singing is wild, full of ecstasy, and the rhythms sound like rock music. The best-known qawwali singer was Nusrat Fateh Ali Khan, who died in 1997. Nusrat, as he was known, made records with English singer Peter Gabriel, and recorded a song with Pearl Jam's singer, Eddie Vedder. Guitarist Pete Townsend of The Who was a big fan, and so were many other rock stars. (He even starred and sang in one of those Bollywood films.) Nusrat's group was called The Qawwali Party. In this case, "party" simply meant a group of people doing something together. But everyone just assumed that this music was meant for partying. It certainly has that sound – but all of the texts are simple, repeated prayers to Allah.

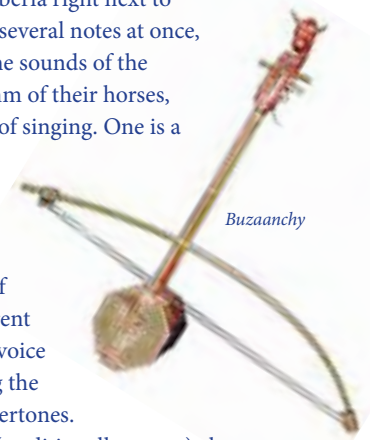


Mother and son playing lute in Lhasa, Tibet

**Tibet.** Religion is even more important to Tibetan music. The chant of Tibet's Buddhist monks sounds like music from another planet. Yes, there is folk music in Tibet, but it's the Buddhist chant that catches everyone's ear. That's because the monks who study these chants are able to sing a regular note, and at the same time produce a much lower note that sounds like a tuba, or like a motor running down. A really good monk can also

make a third note heard, whistling high above the other two. As with the Sufis, one of the reasons the monks make this music is to enter a state of trance, and having the body vibrating with these incredibly deep sounds is supposed to help them. Some groups of Tibetan monks have toured throughout the world, and have collaborated on music with Western composers.

**Tuva.** Tuvans live in a tiny part of the huge Russian region of Siberia right next to Mongolia. Like the Tibetans, they've developed ways of singing several notes at once, but in their case this singing came about as a way of imitating the sounds of the landscape around them, especially the wind, the galloping rhythm of their horses, and sound of rushing water. Tuvans have several different ways of singing. One is a very low style similar to the Tibetan monks, but they can also produce extremely high sounds that almost sound electronic. This technique is known here in the West by the somewhat silly nickname "throat singing," but experts often refer to it as "overtone" or "harmonic" singing. Here's a simple explanation of what that means: all sounds are actually made up of many different vibrations, or "overtones," that blend together. The reason your voice is different from anyone else's, even if you're speaking or singing the exact same note, is that your voice produces a different set of overtones. By changing the shape of his mouth and throat, a Tuvan singer (traditionally a man) changes the overtones in his voice and can pick out the ones he wants you to hear.



Buzaanchy

This sounds hard, but it's actually fairly easy to learn. Of course, to master the technique takes many years. But singing the word "hurry" very slowly – especially singing the "rry" part slowly – will eventually make some simple overtone effects. In Tuva, you can hear a singer holding a long, steady note, a "drone," and sing a whole melody in overtones on top of it. A really good singer can hold a long, steady overtone drone, and sing a melody in "regular" tones underneath. Some of these musicians have toured through the United States as the Throat Singers of Tuva. Their music has also been used in films (if you get the chance, see *Genghis Blues*), and a number of DJs and record producers have sampled their unearthly sounds, so you may have heard some Tuvan singing without even knowing it.



## Music of the Far East

As with Central Asia, the Far East includes a lot of different countries with long traditions of music. Trying to cover them all here would be impossible, but fortunately, we can deal with this huge area of Asia by dividing it into two manageable parts. First, there's the music of China and Japan, which are linked together. Second, there's the music of Indonesia and Southeast Asia, which are known to musicologists as the “gong-chime cultures” because they all use metal percussion instruments as a basic part of their sound.

**China and Japan.** Chinese music is like our own – there are many different styles.

*Pipa*



One of the most important styles is the music of the Chinese court. This is a classical music style that is much older than Western Classical music, and even older than Middle Eastern classical music. What's most unusual is that Chinese court music is largely instrumental (meaning no vocals). There are several opera styles, but China has one of the world's oldest instrumental traditions.

It's also interesting that women were allowed to play music in China's courts and temples as far back as 1,500 years ago.

Chinese instruments include the *gu-zheng* (pronounced goo-SHUNG), which is a type of zither, or wooden board with strings running across it; the *pipa* (PEE-pah), which is a lute, and which probably came to China from the Middle East via the Silk Road (see “Music of Central Asia” for more about the Silk Road); the *erhu* (AIR-hoo), which is a fiddle with two strings; and several different types of flute. It is rare to hear more than one or two of these instruments at one time, although there are now orchestras of traditional instruments that play modern pieces. In traditional Chinese music, especially music for the courts and music for meditation, you would normally hear only solos and duos.

Chinese music is usually built around a scale with fewer notes than ours. If you play a C scale on a piano, you'd play C, D, E, F, G, A, B, and C. A Chinese musician might only play C, D, F, G, A, and C. This type of scale is called “pentatonic” (“penta” means five), because the scale only uses five different notes. It's actually very similar to American blues, which is also pentatonic. The sound of this music is quite elegant, and usually describes a scene from the Chinese landscape or from traditional village life. Famous Chinese pieces depict fishing boats at night, an important battle, and the sights and smells of the plum blossom tree.

Historians can follow the movement of people along the Silk Road from the Middle East into China, but the movement didn't end there. From China, people and their music moved into Korea and then across to the islands of Japan. So in all three countries, you'll find slightly different versions of the zither, the lute, the fiddle, and the flute. As the instruments moved to Japan, so did the idea of re-creating the sounds of the landscape in music. The Japanese took this idea to new levels, creating little paintings in sound that portrayed cranes in their nest, the mating calls of deer, and a mother's lullaby in a court garden. Like their Chinese counterparts, these Japanese

pieces were usually meant for either a solo instrument or a duo. The most common instruments are the bamboo flute, or *shakuhachi* (SHOCK-oo-HOT-chee), and the zither known as koto. When there are duos, it's usually these two instruments that play them.

Japanese music often has a floating quality to it. (So does Japanese art.) That sound is an important part of the music that Zen Buddhist monks play in Japan. Zen is a mystical branch of Buddhism that came to Japan from China over 1000 years ago, and Zen music is a form of meditation. It is almost always played by an unaccompanied shakuhachi. The floating sound is also part of the court music, or *gagaku* (GA-ga-koo), which is built around a much bigger group of instruments. This ensemble includes piercing reed instruments, a mouth organ (which looks like a harmonica on steroids and probably came from Southeast Asia), and a number of drums and cymbals, which are used very sparingly. When you first hear these styles of Japanese music, they may sound like they have no rhythm. They do, but it's not a steady rhythm like Western music uses. Japanese music, as well as Korean and some Chinese music, is based on the rhythm of breathing – a very long and often irregular rhythm. That's where the floating quality comes from.

**Southeast Asia and Indonesia.** The development of metalworking allowed the people of Southeast Asia to begin to create a fascinating group of metallic percussion instruments. These instruments could be precisely tuned, which meant that they could play both rhythms and melodies.



The bas-relief on 8th century Borobudur depicting palace musicians performing musical ensemble, probably the ancient form of Javanese gamelan. The instrument shown here such as drums, bamboo flute, gongs, chime or bells, and lute.

So even though the countries of Southeast Asia have flutes, mouth organs, lutes, zithers, and fiddles, it's their percussion orchestras that really set them apart. Musicologists refer to the musical styles of Thailand, Malaysia, Myanmar, the southern Philippines, and Indonesia as “gong-chime” traditions. The Indonesian tradition has traveled around the world. Indonesia is the home of the *gamelan* (GAM-uh-lon), an orchestra of metal instruments. The gamelan will vary from court to court, and from village to village, but on the Indonesian islands of Bali, Java, and Madura you will find a gamelan in every court and in every village. (In Bali, where metal is scarce, it's common to hear gamelans made of bamboo, but the way the music is played is the same as the metal groups.)

A gamelan is usually built around a bunch of instruments that look like xylophones, and it also includes a group of gongs of various sizes, and at least one drummer. The drummer is actually the “conductor” of the group. Drum beats tell the musicians when to join in, when to speed up, etc.

Music of the Far East *continued*

This is important because gamelan music requires all of the musicians to be listening carefully to each other. The music is very rhythmic, but it takes a lot of these instruments working together to make a melody.



*Javanese gamelan ensemble performance during traditional Javanese Yogyakarta style wedding ceremony at Sasono Utomo, Taman Mini Indonesia Indah, Jakarta, Indonesia.*

So how do you make music with instruments like this? Gamelan music is put together in “hocket” form (see Music of Africa, especially the Central Africa section, for more on hockets). That means the melody is put together like a jigsaw puzzle by the musicians. No one plays the melody by themselves; everyone plays a little part of it, and you have to have all the parts playing the right notes at the right time to get the melody. Here’s a very simple example. Let’s say you have a gamelan of your own and you want to play this melody: C D G A G F A F D C D F D A C A. Well, the bigger the instrument, the fewer notes it has, so the large gong might just play at the end of the melody – like the period at the end of a sentence. In this example, where there are 16 beats, the large gong would play every sixteenth note. The big chimes might play every eighth note. The lead pair of xylophones would play every other note, alternating for the most part with the second pair.

It would all look something like this:

xylophone pair 1: C G G A D D D C  
 xylophone pair 2: D A F C F A  
 small chimes: A F A  
 big chimes: F A  
 large gong: A  
 all the instruments added together  
 C D G A G F A F D C D F D A C A

An actual Indonesian song would not be quite so simple, but it would use this general idea.

You may have noticed that there are only five notes in this example: C, D, F, G, and A. Again, this is a pentatonic scale, similar to the one mentioned in the section on Chinese music. Some gamelans play in this scale, and others use a seven-note scale that’s closer to our own. But the sound of the gamelan is nothing like our music. The metal xylophones are always played in pairs, and each instrument in the pair has a slightly different tuning; this gives the gamelan a strange, shimmery quality.

Sometimes a gamelan will perform with a flutist or singer, but if it’s just the gamelan playing, then the melodies will tend to be simple. To make up for that, the rhythms become very complex and interesting. The interlocking rhythms of the various instruments have made gamelan music very popular with some Western composers. As far back as the 1880s, an Indonesian gamelan traveled to a World’s Fair in Paris, where the famous French composer Claude Debussy heard it. He tried to imitate that sound in some of his works, and in the 20th century a number of composers began working with Indonesian rhythm patterns in their own music. There are even full gamelan ensembles here in the United States. Most of them are based in California, but there are two here in New York (one is at the Indonesian Consulate), and a number of American composers have written works that use these Indonesian ensembles.

There’s one other kind of Indonesian music worth noting. It’s called *kecak* (pronounced KET-chak), although it’s often referred to as the “Balinese monkey chant.” This is a bit of choral music that grew out of the old trance rituals on the island of Bali. In it, the villagers act out a scene in the Hindu story called *Ramayana*, in which an army of monkeys helps the prince rescue his kidnapped princess. The men of the village take the part of the monkey army, while a young female dancer is driven to a state of trance by the hypnotic rhythms that the men chant. This music is also based on hocketing techniques. The melodies are quite simple and the singers are not professionals, but by piecing the music together this way, the men of Bali are capable of producing some amazing rhythmic effects.

## Music of Europe

In recent years Americans have begun to appreciate the classical or “art music” traditions of other parts of the world. Still, though, when we say “classical music,” we usually mean one specific type of classical tradition: the one that grew up in Europe. (To make things even more confusing, “Classical” is also the name given to one particular period of classical music – as we’ll see in a moment.) This music is now being composed virtually everywhere in the world, but the tradition began in France and Italy, then reached its height in Germany, before moving on to the rest of the world.

Many people think classical music is complicated. And some of it is. But actually, classical music in Europe grew from the same sources as folk music, which most people would say is not complicated at all. (Actually, some of it is surprisingly complicated!) In fact, in medieval Europe, there really wasn’t much of a distinction between folk and classical music. That didn’t happen until the Renaissance, when some music began to move into the churches and the courts, leaving the common people behind. You may also be surprised to learn that many of the instruments used in European (and American) classical music are actually from the Arabic world. So you may want to see the “Music of the Middle East” section, too.

It’s interesting to watch how classical music developed, because it started very simply, and each time it changed, it became slightly more complicated. Look on page 85.

As you can see, classical music kept getting more complex, and further away from folk music, until finally some composers said “enough,” and started trying to connect again to a wider audience. Folk music, meanwhile, continued on its merry way throughout Europe. Two world wars had a terrible impact on folk music in Central Europe, but the folk traditions of England,



Baroque instruments including hurdy gurdy, harpsichord, bass viol, lute, violin, and baroque guitar.

Ireland, and Scotland, which were protected somewhat by the water surrounding their islands, continue to be among the world’s richest. In fact, because of the size of the British empire in the 1800s and the Irish emigration to North America, those traditions have influenced folk music in many parts of the world outside of Europe.

There are also strong Celtic folk traditions in the Brittany section of France and in the Galicia region of Spain. The Scandinavian countries have strong folk traditions, and share a love of fiddling and singing with Celtic and British folk styles. It’s interesting to look at the folk music of Southeastern Europe, too. Back in the Medieval period, the influence of Middle Eastern instruments eventually gave us our classical violins, pianos, and guitars. That influence is still being felt in places such as Yugoslavia, Macedonia, Greece, and Bulgaria, where the Ottoman Empire (based in Turkey) had a very strong impact until just over a century ago. So listening to some of the folk music from these places is like looking back in time to what was happening in the rest of Europe some 600 years ago, when classical music was just beginning to develop.



18th century period musical instruments.



Music of Europe *continued*

What's it called?	When was it?	What was it?	Who did it?
<b>Chant</b>	4th century on	One line of music – just a melody. If you were singing a prayer, it was sacred chant. But it's possible that people used the same melodies for singing songs about love affairs, battles, and so forth.	Monks were responsible for singing Gregorian Chant, but Ambrosian Chant is even older, going back to Italy around the year 400. The folk chants of this period are lost.
<b>Organum</b>	12th and 13th centuries	Two lines of music – the melody and a drone; later, three lines of music – two melodies over a drone. At first, the second voice was just a drone, holding a steady note underneath the singer with the real tune. But the addition of a third voice meant that singers could start singing “in harmony” – a huge leap forward in music.	Two composers named Leonin and Perotin (we don't know their full names) were masters of organum. They worked in the Cathedral of Notre Dame in Paris around the year 1200. An amazing woman composer and writer named Hildegard of Bingen (a small town in Germany) also wrote music for voice and drone.
<b>Medieval Music</b>	12th through 15th century	A melody, sometimes in harmony, often with instruments accompanying. Troubadours, or wandering poet/musicians, would sing love songs and tell stories of the Crusades while playing the lute, an instrument they developed from the Arabic oud. Dances were often played with drums and wind instruments.	The troubadours included some rough characters, but England's King Richard the Lion-Hearted was a troubadour, as were many French noblemen. The songs and dances of the time were popular with common folk and in the courts - and sound like medieval rock and roll! (And like rock music, these dances were considered by some people to be a bad influence).
<b>Renaissance Music</b>	late 14th through early 17th century	Increasingly complex harmonies. Complicated music moves out of the streets and towns and into the churches and courts of the wealthy and powerful. This is the start of the real division between “classical” and “folk” music. Voices still carried the main melodies. Instruments were used to accompany and to fill out the sound.	Composers like Frenchman Guillaume de Machaut (pronounced Mah-SHOW) took folk songs and used those melodies as the basis of musical settings of the Mass. Others, like England's Thomas Tallis, piled so many notes on top of each other that it was hard to pick out a melody; the music became a majestic series of slow- moving harmonies.
<b>Baroque Music</b>	around 1620 to 1800	Many lines of music, woven together in “counterpoint.” A very rhythmic style of music, usually made by ensembles of instruments. Voices are still used, but purely instrumental music becomes popular in the courts. “Counterpoint” means that different instruments can play different melodies that fit together to form shifting harmonies.	Italian composers like Vivaldi made the style popular in Europe. But it was J.S.Bach in Germany who brought the style to its highest form. Bach wrote a lot of sacred music as well as music for the courts he worked in, but you'll hear a rhythmic energy in some of his pieces (try the last part of his “Brandenburg Concerto #3”) that would make a rocker proud.
<b>Classical Music</b>	late 1700s, early 1800s	Instrumental music – first real Symphonies. Increasingly complicated harmonies, and many different musical structures for composers to work in. A piece might start in the key of C but move to another key, often borrowing notes from other keys as well. Also, the development of modern opera.	Mozart's operas were so popular that they became a kind of “folk” music in Central Europe, where he reported hearing songs from his operas being sung in the street. Haydn's symphonies revolutionized music – leading towards bigger and longer musical forms.
<b>Romantic Music</b>	mid-1800s to early 1900s	Bigger symphonies, larger orchestras, more mixes of different keys. Romantic music is highly “chromatic” – a word that means colorful. Using many notes that don't “belong” in the key adds surprising sound colors and helps hide the actual key the music is in. The result is a very dramatic and emotional style of music. harmony” – a huge leap forward in music.	Beethoven's music was so dramatic and emotional that critics in the early 1800s actually wondered if he was crazy. (He was deaf by the time he wrote his late symphonies, but he wasn't crazy.) Tchaikovsky became the first great Russian composer with his Romantic ballets and symphonies, and Richard Wagner wrote a set of operas that people are still arguing about over a hundred years later! Germany) also wrote music for voice and drone.
<b>Modernist Music</b>	early 1900s to late 1900s	Abstract music: no keys at all – using all 12 notes equally. This is where classical music gets really complicated. The use of the “12-tone” method leads to “atonal” music – music in no key, and eventually in no recognizable rhythm. This is the musical equivalent of the abstract or modern art movement. Other modernist composers use jazz, and later electronic sounds. Some composers, like the late Iannis Xenakis (pronounced YAN-is Ze-NOCK-is), actually use advanced mathematics to construct their pieces.	Arnold Schoenberg changed everything with his 12-tone technique in the early 1900s. George Gershwin and Aaron Copland put American classical music on the map by writing works that had the sound of jazz or American roots music. Igor Stravinsky and Bela Bartok wrote in various styles, from completely abstract and atonal to folk-based works. Pierre Boulez pioneered the use of electronics as part of a modern classical sound.
<b>Postmodern Music</b>	1960s to present	Return to tonal music, often using folk, rock, and jazz elements. A response to the fact that as modern music became incredibly complex, it stopped reaching many listeners. Composers who grew up listening to the Beatles and Bob Dylan and other popular music acts allow some of that musical influence to affect their music. The result is that some classical composers have now become quite well known.	Philip Glass and Steve Reich are two of the best-known living composers. Glass's music has been used in many movies, and Reich's music has been sampled and remixed by a number of DJs. Arvo Pärt (pronounced Pairt), from Estonia, writes music that sounds almost like medieval music – very simple, staying in one key at a time.

## North American Roots

People have come to North America from every inhabited part of the world. Naturally, they brought their music with them. So when we talk about “traditional American” or “American roots” music, we’re really talking about a wide variety of styles. Of course, the earliest music heard on our continent was the music of the Native Americans. You can read more about that in the Native Music section. But as European settlers and African slaves entered North America, their musical styles mingled and produced some distinctly American sounds: sounds like the blues, Appalachian folk music, and spirituals. These are the roots of today’s popular songs. If you listen to pop music, to rock or rap or reggae, you’re listening to the musical grandchildren of these styles.

We’ve seen a lot of recent interest in American roots music. In the film *O Brother, Where Art Thou?* the soundtrack consists of traditional American bluegrass, gospel, and “old-timey” music. That soundtrack has become a best-seller. A few years back, Americans became interested in Cajun culture – the French-based culture of Louisiana. Of course, we were mostly interested in the great Cajun food, but Cajun music is just as spicy and enjoyable. And some of the Latin music styles that have grown up in the U.S., like Tejano, have become famous worldwide. As you might expect, the various American roots styles reflect the diversity of people who make up the United States and Canada. Here are some of them:

**Appalachian folk music.** This is music based on the folk songs of the British Isles (see “Music from Europe”). In fact, in the early 20th century, when the English folk music researcher Cecil Sharp came to the Appalachian mountains in the eastern United States, he found that some of the old English folk songs that had practically disappeared in Great Britain were still alive and well in North Carolina or West Virginia. As with most immigrants, the settlers from the British Isles had to travel light, so this music initially featured voices and fiddles. But guitars and banjos became more commonplace in the 19th century, and the music began to change. It became more rhythmic, and as people began moving around the country, so did the music.

**Old-timey music.** Also called simply “old time music,” this is what happened when the British-based folk music met some of the African-based styles like blues and spirituals (see below). The result was a very popular style of music that included hit songs that are still sung today, such as “You Are My Sunshine.” In old-timey music, you would often hear several voices singing in harmony, and instruments would be made from whatever was handy – washboards used to do the family laundry made an effective percussion instrument when scraped; jugs of various sizes could be blown into (in fact, a lot of old-timey bands were called jug bands), and a broomstick on top of a bucket with a string attached could be used as a kind of bass instrument.

**Bluegrass.** Bluegrass is a more complicated form of old-timey music. The featured sounds are the banjo, fiddle, mandolin, and guitar. Bluegrass vocals are often referred to as “the high, lonesome sound.” Usually there’s just one vocalist, with a group of musicians playing intricate patterns of chords and melodies. Unlike the folk music and old-timey music that it grew out of, bluegrass is hard to play, and isn’t the sort of thing that everyone in town would be able to play. With bluegrass, we reach the stage where you have to have a certain level of musical expertise to play it well. Bluegrass is the main root of today’s country music stars like Lyle Lovett and Shania Twain.



*Bluegrass artists use a variety of stringed instruments to create a unique sound.*

**Spirituals.** The African immigrants didn’t come here voluntarily; they were brought as slaves. They were forced to adopt Christian names and customs, and anything that reflected their origins in Africa (usually in West Africa) was considered pagan. So the African slaves did a marvelous thing: they sang the songs they were allowed to sing – usually songs about Christian themes or songs about work – but they sang them in the call-and-response choral styles of Africa. (For more, see “Music of Africa.”) And since they weren’t allowed to bring any of their

instruments to America, they had to make their own. When they tried to recreate the sound of the African lute, or *gonje*, with the materials at hand here, they ended up creating the banjo. Spirituals and work songs had a strong rhythmic quality – but even more important, they had a strong emotional impact. Even the white Americans were affected by it: the old style of church singing known as “Shape Note Singing” was a result of white Americans trying to capture the intensity of the African-American spirituals. Spirituals led directly to the 20th century gospel music tradition, which in turn led to several generations of famed African-American singers, from Aretha Franklin to Whitney Houston.

**Blues.** When the slaves weren’t singing together, they’d sing alone. Singing alone is a very different emotional experience, and the pain and suffering that went with slavery poured into the sounds of this music. No one really knows when the term “blues” was coined for this music, but the word certainly fits. Early blues singers would sing without instruments. Some would make a kind of one-string guitar by putting two nails into a piece of wood and then tying a string to the nails. Later, the guitar and the harmonica became the favorite instruments for a blues singer. The blues began in the South, near the delta of the Mississippi River. But as the 20th century progressed, the blues moved up the river – to Kansas City, where a big city meant lots of musicians and the chance to form big blues bands. Then the blues moved even farther north, to Chicago, where the guitars became electric guitars and the blues became a hard-rockin’, high-energy style. American jazz grew in part out of the blues bands of the early 20th century, and rock music came directly out of the electric blues bands of Chicago. Some of the greatest rock bands, including the Beatles and the Rolling Stones, started off as young white guys trying to sound like old black bluesmen!

**Latino music.** As the Spanish colonization of Central and South America proceeded, new settlers came into the southern United States in the 1800s. Their music was already a blend – in their case, of Native American and Spanish elements. When these people moved north from Mexico and met the European settlers in Texas, the music changed again. Suddenly, instruments



### North American Roots *continued*

like the accordion (from Germany) and classical instruments such as trumpet and cello were available. In Texas, the style that resulted was called Tex-Mex, full of fast-paced dances and slow love songs. Farther west, in what is now New Mexico and Arizona, the *mariachi* band developed – a kind of Latin American chamber ensemble, playing love songs and party music while parading through the streets. Modern Latino stars like the late Selena owe a lot to these early styles; the modern Tejano tradition that Selena popularized is a descendant of both Tex-Mex and mariachi music.



**Euro-Canadian music.** “Cajun” is a mispronunciation of the word “Acadian,” referring to the eastern seaboard of Canada. The French colonized the region, but when the English took over Canada in the early 1800s they expelled a lot of the French colonists, who took a long and dangerous journey to Louisiana. There, they met German immigrants who introduced them to the accordion, as well as Native Americans and freed African-Americans who had already figured out how to continue playing their own music right under the disapproving noses of the white Americans who ran the territory. (That’s actually the origin of the famous New Orleans Mardi Gras parade.) The result was Cajun music: a high-octane blend of fiddling, percussion, singing – and lots of eating and dancing. While the Acadians were being expelled, though, the British allowed the Scottish and Irish settlers in eastern Canada to remain. Many were settled on Cape Breton Island. It’s only recently that the music of this tiny island has begun to attract attention around the world. And

that’s because the music on Cape Breton is like the music that started the whole American roots phenomenon: it’s based on the folk music from the British Isles; it’s grown up in an isolated area; and now people are turning to it as a sort of living museum of old Celtic folk music, just like Cecil Sharp did with Appalachian folk music almost a hundred years ago.

## Jazz

Jazz is one of America's great contributions to the music of the world. So why do we have so much trouble talking about it? People have been arguing for years about what jazz is. One of the greatest jazz musicians of all time, trumpeter Louis Armstrong, was asked how to define jazz. He replied, "Man, if you gotta ask, you'll never know." And another great jazz trumpeter, Miles Davis, was strongly opposed to using the term at all. We also don't know how the word even came about. And it's almost impossible to say when jazz began.

So if we can't say when it started, or what the word means, what can we say about jazz? Well, many people would say that improvisation is the key to jazz. Jazz, they say, isn't music written down on a page, like classical music; it's music that is made on the spot. Problem is, some of the most famous jazz bands, the so-called Big Bands of the 1930s and 1940s, played music that was mostly written down. Still, improvisation is a good place to start. Most people expect to hear a jazz player taking a solo at some point during a song, improvising while the rest of the band keeps the rhythm or the chords going in the background.

Others would say that there is something in the rhythms – something called syncopation – that makes a song "jazzy." Syncopation means playing off or in between the beats. The easiest way to understand it is to clap the rhythm of a song – any song being played on the radio these days will do. Most pop songs have a rhythm that you can count this way: "1–2–3–4, 1–2–3–4." Clapping your hands while you count each beat is a very simple thing to do.

count: 1 2 3 4 1 2 3 4  
clap: x x x x x x x x

The first step toward syncopation is to fill in the gaps between those four beats by saying "and," like this:

count: 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 1 & 2 & ...  
clap: x x x, etc.

Again, you're only clapping your hands when you count a number. The "ands" come in between. This is still pretty easy stuff. Now, count again, but this time, clap only on the "ands." count: 1 and 2 and 3 and 4 and 1 and 2 and 3... clap: x and x and x, etc. This is harder than it sounds, because when you're making music, your body naturally wants to be "on the beat." To make it even harder (and a bit more like jazz), try clapping on different combinations of numbers and "ands."

count: 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 &  
clap: x x x x x x x

Syncopation, getting in between the beats, makes the rhythm more interesting. The best jazz players can play very complicated syncopations, and a good improvisation will often make it seem like the player has lost the beat completely – until he or she suddenly hits the "1" again, and the whole band is back in rhythm.

Jazz had many parents. It came from a mix of early blues, minstrel shows (travelling road shows popular in the 1880s and 1890s), and ragtime. Ragtime was a style of highly syncopated music played by pianists like Scott Joplin – the first great African-American composer – that was popular in the United States in the early 1900s. Ragtime could be played by a band, but the best

players were pianists. They'd have "cutting contests," in which each pianist tried to outdo the other, playing the most complicated syncopations they could and doing increasingly ferocious improvisations. This combination of syncopation and improvisation helped shape the first 30 or 40 years of jazz's history.

Some of the earliest jazz came from New Orleans, where the style known as Dixieland Jazz can still be heard today. This style of music included instruments like the banjo and the tuba, but as jazz moved up the Mississippi River, the instruments changed. (Jazz followed the same trail as the blues – see the North American "Roots" Music section – up the Mississippi to Kansas City, then to Chicago.) New York also was an important part of the jazz scene, almost from the beginning. In the 1920s, the start of the "Jazz Age," when jazz became the popular sound of American music, New York was where you could hear great players like Louis Armstrong and the young Duke Ellington. Ellington was a pianist, but he was even more important as a bandleader: the Ellington Orchestra was a band full of musicians who would go on to become stars on their own.

Big Band jazz was one of the most popular types of music in the United States in the 1930s and early 40s. Count Basie (from Kansas City), Benny Goodman, and Glenn Miller were all famous bandleaders whose groups featured lots of horns (though Basie himself played the piano) and had songs that were almost completely written out. Still, the best players in each band would often take an improvised solo during songs, especially in live concerts.

After the Big Band era ended, jazz began to get more complicated. The style known as Bebop grew up in New York, with players such as trumpeter Dizzy Gillespie (famous for his enormous cheeks, which would puff out when he played) and drummer Max Roach.



Louis Armstrong

### Jazz *continued*

Here, the players improvised much more, and sometimes instead of using a melody they'd just use the background chords of a popular song and improvise over them.

The Cool Jazz style grew up in the 1950s, and was led by the trumpeter Miles Davis. This style was not as fast as Bebop; the melodies were often moody, and the improvising not as wild. Like Duke Ellington, Miles Davis put bands together that included many musicians who would become famous on their own later on. One of them was a sax player named John Coltrane. Coltrane was a great "cool" player, but in the 1960s he began to study African culture, and to explore the African roots of jazz.

Coltrane's music changed jazz. His drummer, Elvin Jones, could sound like a one-man thunderstorm. Coltrane himself began experimenting with "free improvisation" – which means he wasn't improvising on a melody, he was just playing the music he wanted to hear at that moment.

Coltrane was still a fairly young man when he died in 1967. His friend and fellow sax player Pharoah Sanders continued his work with African music and Egyptian music. The pianist Randy Weston, from Brooklyn, also became interested in African music, and to this day performs in New York with Moroccan musicians, exploring one of jazz's musical grandparents. The free improvisations that Coltrane played also influenced other musicians, such as pianist Cecil Taylor (another Brooklynite).

But a lot more has happened to jazz: the electric instruments that were so important to rock music in the 1960s began moving into jazz in the 1970s. Miles Davis was important here, too – he began using electric guitar, keyboard, and bass in his band. And, people began listening to the older styles of jazz again. Some of this is due to the Marsalis Brothers, who grew up in New

Orleans, where the earlier types of jazz are still played. They began making a name for themselves in the 1980s. Sax player Branford Marsalis reached a nationwide television audience every night as the leader of the band on Jay Leno's *Tonight Show*, and his brother Wynton Marsalis, the trumpeter, is possibly the most famous jazz musician in the world today. Wynton Marsalis is also the director of *Jazz At Lincoln Center*, and has spent many years presenting the "classic jazz" styles of the 1940s, 50s, and 60s to audiences around the country.

Funny thing about jazz is that, in the beginning, it was not considered "high art," the way classical music is. Some people thought it was a very low form of music. Now, it is considered by many people to be America's true classical music, and even Carnegie Hall, the famous classical music hall, felt it needed its own jazz band. At the same time, jazz has gone back to the streets that it came from. Many hip-hop artists have claimed jazz as part of their musical heritage, and you'll hear some of today's more adventurous rappers and hip-hop producers using syncopation and improvisation today. Guru, who was half of the group Gang Starr, has produced three albums called *Jazzmatazz* – hip-hop music with lots of syncopated rhythms and musicians (and rappers) improvising. So even though it's still hard to say what "jazz" is, no one argues anymore about how important it is.



Wynton Marsalis

## Latin Music in New York

Latin music exists in many different styles in many different countries. But it's worth looking at Latin music here in New York because many of those styles can be heard all around us, and in fact some of the most popular Latin music, like salsa, actually originated in New York. Brazilian music, though, is a special case, so we'll look at that separately in a moment.

New York City is home to large communities of Puerto Rican, Cuban, Dominican, and Colombian immigrants. One of the fastest-growing immigrant communities in the city is from Mexico. All of these groups have brought a rich tradition of music with them, and even though each group has its own distinct style, they also have a lot in common. Their Latin American culture is a mix of three different elements: Native American, European, and African. Each region, though, has mixed those three elements in different ways.

It's hard to say just how much influence the Native American cultures have had on Latin music. We know that all through the Western hemisphere people used various types of flutes, whistles, rattles, and drums – and the voice, too, of course. But many of the instruments used in Latin music came from Europe. The guitar, mandolin, and violin came from Spain, Portugal, and Italy. German settlers brought the accordion. And even though African slaves were not allowed to bring their instruments with them, that didn't stop them from bringing their lively, often complex rhythms to the West.

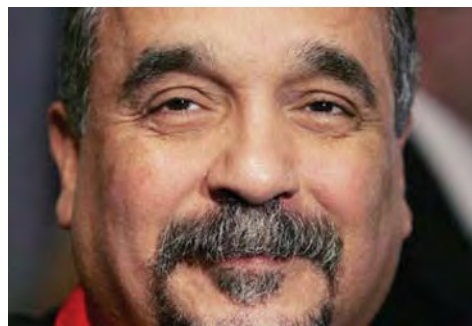
You can think of Latino musicians as cooks, working with these three ingredients but coming up with different recipes. In South America, the rhythms are often based on rhythms from Central Africa. (You can hear some of the same rhythms today in countries such as Angola.) Colombian cumbia, with its



Dizzy Gillespie, 1955

catchy accordion melodies and quick dance beats, is a good example. In the Caribbean and Central America, the slaves generally came from West Africa, and the rhythms are somewhat different. The Puerto Rican styles known as bomba and plena still have obvious West African roots, even though many Puerto Rican bands have added guitars, horns, and keyboards. Cuban music is built around a rhythmic idea called the *clave* (pronounced KLAH-vay), which also has African roots. The *clave* is a steady pulse that goes through an entire song. (Well, it's actually a lot more complicated than that, but if a Cuban musician says you're in *clave*, it's a real compliment: it means your life is in sync with the world around you.)

All of this music is part of the sound of New York. But Latin music here has two other, important ingredients: jazz and pop music. In the 1940s, famous jazz musicians like Dizzy Gillespie discovered that Cuban



Willie Colon

rhythms were as complicated as jazz rhythms (see the “Jazz” section for more about the “syncopated” rhythms of jazz), and they began working with Cuban players and creating what came to be known as Latin Jazz. As a result, some of Cuba's greatest musicians became regular parts of the New York music scene.

And in the 1960s, a group of young Latino musicians here in New York began to experiment with the electric sounds of rock and pop music, mixing it with their own Latin

roots and the jazzy sounds they heard in the clubs and on the radio. They played horns, and electric guitars, and lots of keyboards. The style came to be known as salsa. Bandleader and songwriter Willie Colon was one of the founders of the style – even though he was just a teenager at the time – and in the 1970s he helped launch the Fania All-Stars, a supergroup of Latino musicians based in New York. Their blend of salsa, rock and disco resulted in a series of hugely successful albums.

Willie Colon is no longer playing salsa these days (he's a politician in Westchester County), but the style he helped to create has become one of the most popular forms of Latin music anywhere. It is a homegrown New York style, and it's had a strong impact on a lot of other music being made here. You can hear the salsa influence in rock music (like David Byrne's hit record *Rei Momo*), in the jazz clubs of downtown Manhattan, and in the theaters (e.g., in Paul Simon's Broadway musical *The Capeman*).

Just as important, you can hear the influence of salsa in other types of Latin music. When the *salseros* (musicians who play salsa) started showing how well horns and electric instruments fit with Latin rhythms, other musicians took notice.

There are cumbia bands in New York that use sax and electric guitar with the traditional accordion – or even instead of the accordion. Puerto Rican plena bands like Los Pleneros de la 21 (a New York band named after a Puerto Rican bus stop – stop #21) still play the old drums and call-and-response vocals that came from Africa centuries ago, but they also use electric keyboards, bass guitar, and drum kit. And then there are the Nuyoricans – Puerto Ricans born and raised in New York – like Viento de Agua, who play a style that uses plena, salsa, and jazz; or Manny Oquendo y Libre, who are basically a Nuyorican salsa band.

For a long time, Latin music has been one of the sounds of the city streets. Back in the 1970s, there was a band in Brooklyn called Mandrill who played a mix of Latin, funk and rock music. In the 1980s, musicians from the Dominican Republic living in New York also began using American rock, funk and blues music in a style called bachata. Actually, bachata music goes back almost one hundred years in the Dominican Republic, but it was out of fashion until New York musicians like guitarist Luis Dias began updating the sound and making it more modern.



Latin Music in New York *continued*



Chucho Valdes

A lot of Latin musicians in New York try to use that “street sound,” even if it’s not a part of their own tradition, because it reflects the life of the community around them. A good example is the Afro-Cuban music of *santeria* (pronounced sahnter- EE-ah). *Santeria* is not a musical term; it’s a type of religion. African slaves were forced to become Christians, and some of them began to mix the Christian saints with their traditional gods and goddesses. In Cuba, the result was *santeria*. (A similar

thing happened in Haiti, where the result was voodoo, or voodoo.) *Santeria* rituals involve lots of drumming and chanting. There are a number of traditional *santeria* groups in New York, each led by a drummer/priest. One of the best known is Milton Cardona, and even though he still performs with voices and drums, he also includes a lot of *Baden Powell* the same instruments you’ll hear in a salsa band. His band, *Eya Aranla*, is still a *santeria* group – but they’re a New York *santeria* group. So their sound reflects what his audience hears in the city around them.

The mix of different Latin music styles is one of the things that makes New York’s Latin music so exciting. New York City is home to a Cuban *santeria* group with a Puerto Rican leader; a Dominican merengue (pronounced muh-RENGgay) band with Colombian and Puerto Rican musicians; and even a Latin “jam band” called Groove Collective, who have a large following of fans and perform many concerts in the tradition of jam bands like the Grateful Dead and Phish. Although they’re New Yorkers, they’ve



collaborated with other Latin players such as Chucho Valdes, one of Cuba’s greatest living pianists.

Groove Collective is a group of professional musicians, but many of New York’s Latino musicians are not. One of the great charms of Latin music in New York is that it is still a part of the community, so the gap between performer and audience is not as wide as it is in so many other types of music. In recent years, New York has seen the arrival of a new wave of Cuban musicians, many of them professional. And the expanding Mexican community will have an impact on Latin music in New York as well. It seems likely that for many years to come, New York City will be the best place to hear the widest range of Latin music.

Brazil is the Disneyland of music. Brazil has so much music in so many different styles that it’s hard to know where to begin. First of all, Brazil was a Portuguese colony, not Spanish, so the language is different. But there’s also something in the way Brazilians mixed the European, African, and Native American musical traditions that is unlike anything else in the world. Some Brazilian music has obvious connections to the Latin styles we’ve already mentioned: the Afro-Cuban tradition of *santeria* has a Brazilian cousin called *candomble* (pronounced candum-BLAY) which features call-and-response singing (to many of the same traditional deities as *santeria* or *voodoo*) and very African-sounding drums. But even here, the Brazilians added something different – an instrument called a *berimbau* (BERR-im-bow), which looks like an archery bow with a small pumpkin attached to one end. There is a reason for this: *candomble* is not just music, or even a spiritual practice – it’s also a type of martial art. The dancing that goes with the music is quite athletic, and if you look at it, you might think the dancers were practicing a form of kick-boxing. Of course, African slaves in Brazil were treated like slaves everywhere else; they were not supposed to have weapons or learn to fight back. So they cleverly developed a musical instrument (the *berimbau*) and a style of dance that had its roots in exactly the things they were not supposed to do.

Antonio Carlos Jobim



*Candomble* is most often found in the state of Bahia (Bah-HEE-uh), which is in northeastern Brazil, the closest part of the Western Hemisphere to Africa. But there are other musical styles that can be heard all through Brazil. And now, they can be heard all over the globe. After America and England, Brazil is probably the most successful exporter of pop music in the world. Just as our pop music includes many styles, from Broadway songs to urban hip-hop, Brazilian popular music takes lots of different forms. But it’s all usually lumped together under the name MPB — the Portuguese initials for Brazilian Popular Music. MPB includes classic Brazilian sounds like the *samba*, a very

Latin Music in New York *continued*

rhythmic type of dance music built around drums. Usually this music is played in the streets by enormous groups, or schools, of drummers and singers. At carnivals and other special occasions (such as soccer matches, which are *huge* special occasions in Brazil), rival schools will engage in contests to see which band can play louder, swing harder, and generally get the party whipped up more.

Another key sound of MPB is the guitar. In Brazil, the guitar is almost as popular as soccer, and there are great Brazilian guitarists who play classical music, jazz, and American pop music. But some of the best MPB has been made by Brazilian guitarists who combined all three. In the middle of the 20th century, songwriters like Antonio Carlos Jobim (Zhoe-BEEM) and Baden Powell created a sophisticated style of music that used classical and jazz elements in a pop music setting. Jobim became so popular that he had hit songs around the world, and in the 1960s did a best-selling album with the famous American singer Frank Sinatra. Jobim and his colleague Joao Gilberto (Zhwow Zhil-BER-toe) were the most popular musicians in the style known as *bossa nova*. This music had a relaxed, tropical feel that made people in America, Japan, and Europe imagine they were listening to music from some faraway, exotic place... which is, after all, exactly what they were doing!



Caetano Veloso

*Bossa nova* was the music that most people thought of when someone mentioned Brazil. But in the late 1960s, a younger group of Brazilians began to change things. They were brought up on rock music, and tired of the military government in Brazil. So they took the sophisticated harmonies and melodies of *bossa nova*, added a strong rock'n'roll edge and political lyrics, and created a style known as *tropicalismo*. Then the military dictatorship did something that would accidentally make this style a worldwide sound: they put the leaders of the *tropicalismo* movement in jail, and then sent some of them out of Brazil entirely. Gilberto Gil (Zhil-BER-toe Zhil) and Caetano Veloso, two of Brazil's greatest young songwriters, were sent into exile. They didn't stop making music; they just started making it for other audiences around the world. Veloso, for example, settled first in England, and then eventually in New York. Once Brazil overthrew the dictatorship, these musicians were able to return home. But the sounds of *tropicalismo* had already taken root in Europe and America. To this day, even though he once again lives in Brazil, Caetano Veloso can often be found in New York, singing his own songs and occasionally songs by his American songwriter friends.



Because so much Brazilian music has great rhythms for dancing, the various types of MPB have become real favorites with the DJs and producers who create music for dance clubs. So it was no surprise when the sounds of American and European dance music – electronica, hip-hop, and similar styles – started to appear in Brazilian music. One of the current trends in MPB is using a laptop computer with the usual acoustic guitar and drums. The young singer Fernanda Porto, for example, had a big hit in England with a song called “Sambassim” in 2002; it was a catchy blend of old-style *samba* and *bossa nova* with modern electronic dance grooves. Because MPB, Brazilian Popular Music, has such a long and strong tradition, it seems to be able to incorporate sounds and instruments from other parts of the world, while still managing somehow to sound Brazilian.

## Western Pop Music

After reading all of the previous sections, you're probably thinking, "Hey, I just gotta go get myself some of that Tuvan throat singing!" Or maybe you're just asking yourself, "What does all this stuff have to do with me?" Well, the answer is: more than you might think. The pop music that you listen to has some surprising connections with some of the other styles we've covered earlier. One of Janet Jackson's recent hits uses a melody borrowed from a classical composer named Erik Satie. Lots of hip-hop bands, from Gang Starr to The Jungle Brothers, have used short samples of jazz as the basis of some of their songs. Rock musicians have been fascinated with Indian music since the Beatles and the Rolling Stones back in the 1960s.



George Gershwin

Western pop music grows out of several sources, mostly notably the American blues. See the section "North American Roots Music" for more on some of these musical sources. But what really made pop music popular was the development of recording technology and radio. In the 20th century, it was suddenly possible for a single version of a song to travel across the country in a matter of days. The first songs to actually do that were favorite opera melodies, or sentimental songs sung by opera singers. But it wasn't long before the real hits started coming from Broadway and "Tin Pan Alley" (referring to the New York-based songwriters who were hired to write songs for famous singers and movie actors). The middle of the 20th century in America was a sort of Golden Age

of pop music, with songwriters such as George Gershwin, Hoagy Carmichael, Johnny Mercer, and Richard Rodgers feeding a steady diet of songs to the most popular singers of the day. Al Jolson, Bing Crosby, Frank Sinatra, and Ella Fitzgerald were just a few of the best known. Ella Fitzgerald was a jazz singer, and her versions of pop songs helped keep the sounds of jazz in America's ears.

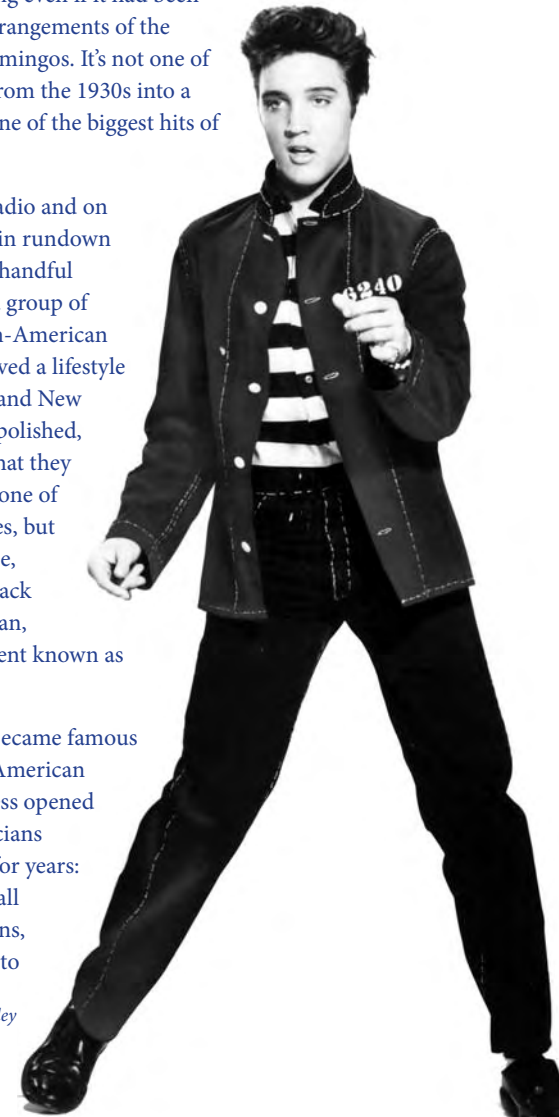
The 1950s saw the rise of "doo-wop," a style of singing that usually featured one lead singer and a chorus that often sang nonsense syllables, like "bop doo-wop" and "shebop shebop," in the rhythm

of the song. These songs were usually pretty simple, but as the 50s went on, the arrangements of the songs would become increasingly complicated. "Arrangement" refers to the choice of instruments used, and the way the parts of the song are divided up among those instruments. A simple arrangement might be a piano playing the chords of the song, the bass guitar playing the bass line, and the drum kit sketching the rhythm. By the end of the 1950s, record producers were developing much more complex arrangements. Phil Spector became famous for his "Wall of Sound" style, where lots of string instruments and horns might be added to fill out the sound. A good arrangement could make a hit out of a song even if it had been recorded several times before. One of the great arrangements of the 1950s was "I Only Have Eyes For You" by The Flamingos. It's not one of the biggest arrangements, but by turning a song from the 1930s into a slow, moody doowop number, the band created one of the biggest hits of the decade.

While all these famous singers were all over the radio and on hit records, there was something else happening, in rundown clubs and auditoriums in Chicago, Detroit, and a handful of other places. It started in the early 1940s with a group of singers who were called "howlers," mostly African-American singers who'd grown up with the blues and who lived a lifestyle that was far removed from Hollywood's elegance and New York's high culture. Their bands were raw and unpolished, with wailing horns and choppy keyboards. But what they lacked in precision they made up for in energy. None of these "howlers" had much of an impact themselves, but in the 1950s a white kid from Memphis, Tennessee, started borrowing some musical ideas from his black neighbors, and in a few short years, that young man, named Elvis Presley, had kick-started the movement known as rock 'n' roll.

Decades before Madonna, Prince, and Hammer became famous enough to go by just one name, Elvis was taking American pop music, and films and TV, by storm. His success opened the door for some of the African-American musicians who'd been developing the new rock 'n' roll style for years: Chubby Checkers, Bo Diddley, and Chuck Berry all produced a string of hits that had young Americans, black and white, doing the Twist and rushing out to learn to play guitar.

Elvis Presley





Western Pop Music *continued*

The decade of the 1960s was a real turning point in American music. Doo-wop gave way to R&B (or rhythm 'n' blues) and soul music, with bands such as Sam & Dave scoring hits with songs like “Soul Man.” James Brown, “the Godfather of Soul,” began his electrifying performances, bringing a tremendous sense of showmanship – and a band that could stop on a dime. After James Brown, “funk” became a part of America’s musical vocabulary. Like “jazz,” it was one of those words that was hard to define – but everyone knew James Brown had it. And many other people wanted it. On the island of Jamaica, musicians trying to imitate the sounds of American R&B and funk found themselves accidentally creating a completely new style of music, called “reggae.”

*The Beatles*



Actually, the Jamaicans weren’t the only ones creating a new style by mistake – in England, young English musicians trying to sound like old American bluesmen wound up instead creating the so-called British Rock Invasion. The Beatles and the Rolling Stones were the two most popular of these bands, but they weren’t the only ones. Pink Floyd, whose wild electronic music helped create the style of “psychedelic rock” in the late 60s/early 70s, was also a group that started by trying to create an English version of the blues and R&B they heard coming from the United States.

Also in the 1960s, Bob Dylan shocked the folk music world by replacing his acoustic guitar with an electric one. The Byrds began to take the British rock sounds and make something American out of them. And the Beach Boys took the art of using recording studios and modern production techniques to new heights. Rock music began to show some unexpected connections to other forms of music. The Grateful Dead blended American folk and bluegrass music with screaming electric improvisations. Jimi Hendrix dragged the sounds of southern blues into the world of high-volume electric guitars, surrounding them with distortion and feedback effects, even setting his guitar on fire or playing with his feet. And the Beatles discovered Ravi Shankar, the Indian sitar player, and exposed a whole generation of young listeners to non-Western music for the first time.

After all the excitement of the 1960s, the 70s had a tough act to follow. There were still pop singers, people like Neil Diamond and Barbra Streisand, who continued in an older style of singing that eventually came to be called “Easy Listening.” As these singers have aged, so has their audience, but both of them still have huge followings – even if they’re often the butt of musical jokes among younger music fans. Meanwhile, rock split into lots of smaller factions in the 1970s. Psychedelic or progressive rock became increasingly complicated, inspired by jazz and Western classical music. Punk rock came out of New York and London in the middle of the 70s as a stripped-down, back-to-basics response to the bigger sound of other rock styles. And then there

was Disco. This was one of the most amazing bits of popular music America has come up with – very few people would actually admit to liking Disco, with its repetitive beats and lightweight arrangements, yet Disco recordings by Donna Summers and the Bee Gees were huge hits, and a suspicious number of people who claimed to hate Disco somehow seemed to know all the dances.

Disco’s reliance on dance rhythms turned out to be a major influence on rock music in the 1980s, and can still be heard today in the various types of music you can hear in the dance clubs – styles with names like ambient, electronica, and triphop. But as the 1970s drew to a close, a new type of rhythmic music began to emerge. It came from the hard streets of the Bronx and Brooklyn, took the social and political message of 1960s rock, and married it to a strong but simple dance rhythm. It didn’t have a name for a while, but eventually people started calling it “rap,” named after the rhythmic chanting that took the place of singing. This music was not made in fancy studios with high-tech production equipment – at least not at first. It was made by groups of kids who didn’t have a lot of musical education, and some didn’t even have instruments. What they had was a message, and the imagination to create music out of the sounds that surrounded them. A couple of turntables and a stack of records was enough for a DJ to create a new song out of small bits, or samples, of older songs.



By the early 1980s, rap had become increasingly popular, and artists such as Grandmaster Flash and Kurtis Blow even had hit songs, and released albums that were highly produced. Afrika Bambaataa made a recording with Johnny Rotten, the leader of England’s most famous punk rock band, the Sex Pistols. The music industry began to notice, and throughout the 1980s musicians began to make music not just with instruments but also with turntables and then with digital samplers. Samplers were keyboard instruments that could take a piece of sound – any sound, from a cough to a dog barking to a recording of a symphony orchestra – and play it back whenever it was needed, on whatever musical note was needed. As bands got bigger, and DJs got even more sophisticated in the way they “played” their turntables, hip-hop was born. By the end of the decade, artists like De La Soul had launched hip-hop into the front of America’s pop music scene, using literally hundreds of samples of other people’s music to create their own inventive songs. Of course, the idea of using other people’s music could create problems. For one thing, you can’t just borrow someone else’s music, because it’s protected by copyright law. Copyright means that if you wrote it, it’s yours, and if someone else uses it you get paid (these payments are called “royalties”). This applies to anyone who writes a book or invents a new game or makes a movie, and it applies to everyone who writes or records a song. A lot of early rap and hip-hop records were only made available to dance clubs because the musicians who made them didn’t get permission to use the samples. (This is referred to as “clearing the rights”



### Western Pop Music *continued*

for the samples.) So if they sold their records and made money, they could be sued in court and be forced to pay royalties to the original musicians. De La Soul, on their album *Three Feet High and Rising*, spent a lot of time and money clearing the rights for the samples they used. But they missed one, and it ended up costing them a fair amount of money in court.

In the last decade, hip-hop and rock have found a lot of common ground. It's not uncommon to hear bands like Gorillaz or Limp Bizkit that have both a singer and a rapper, with arrangements that include rocking electric guitars but also a DJ with samplers and turntables. In fact, one of the most interesting things about pop music is that there are so many different types: Jay Z, Britney Spears, and U2 represent three very different forms of pop music, but you can hear all three on a Top-40 radio station, or see their music videos on MTV.

The world is smaller than you think, and with satellite broadcasting and recording technology bringing all of the world's people closer together, our pop music has become the world's pop music, too. It's had a huge impact on the music of just about every country on earth, and part of the reason is that Western pop music is some of the most carefully produced music ever made. You may like some of it and hate some of it, but American recording studios, American record producers, and the quality of American "session musicians" – musicians who are not part of a band themselves but who are hired by the studio or producer for a particular project – are all top class. There's also the marketing muscle of America's record companies, but that's a topic for another day.

### Music Educator ...

Music is known as the universal language because its rhythms and rhymes capture our common human experience. *Music from the Inside Out: A Resource Guide for Music Teachers*, was developed to assist you in exploring with your students the fundamentals of music while simultaneously discovering the similarities and differences of the language of music as it is spoken throughout the world: How is the music of diverse cultures similar? How is the music of diverse cultures different? What is it about music that evokes feelings of joy, sadness, elation or despair? Why do some rhythms make us want to dance, while others invite us to sit back, relax and listen? What is rhythm? How does music help to define a particular culture?

### About Sample Units of Study and Appendices A, B, and C

The following pages are from *Music from the Inside Out: A Resource Guide for Music Teachers*, which was originally conceived as a resource for a ninth-grade music survey course. The authors of the original *Resource Guide* believe that a music course in 21st century New York City cannot be fully conceived without an introduction to some of the exemplary and defining music from various regions of the world, past and present. As you prepare your course of study within the framework of the *Blueprint*, it is our hope that connections will continually be made with music from every corner of the globe.

The Sample Units of Study include suggested topics, instructional ideas, aims, outcomes, and student activities that enhance literacy. Following some topics are “Tips from the Pros” that serve as sample motivations. Use these as they are or as examples of what is possible in your practice. In some cases, you will find sample lesson plans prepared by experienced music teachers.

It is our hope the pages that follow will help you introduce your students to music in such a way that they understand:

- the elements of music
- the process by which composers, arrangers, and performers create music
- the similarities and differences in music of various eras and geographic locations
- the musical and cultural influences that have helped create American Music

Any one of these musical topics could be a course by itself. However, by carefully introducing your students to music that contains many kinds of rhythms, forms, and compositional and performance techniques, we hope you will, in your own way, inspire your students with a desire to understand, explore, and appreciate all kinds of music.

## Unit 1 – Science and Perception: Exploring Sound

### Rationale

Music can be defined as “organized sound in time.” Clearly, music cannot exist without sound – it would not be heard. But what is sound? This unit seeks to introduce and explore the science of sound as well as the human perception of sound.

### Instructional Objectives

*Students will:*

- understand the concepts of sound waves.
- understand the characteristics of waveforms.
- determine how to measure waves and waveforms.
- study the anatomy of the human ear.
- explore auditory perception.
- discuss the effects of the environment on sound.

### Topics and Concepts to Be Explored

- The science of sound:  
What are sound waves and how do we measure them?
- Human perception of sound:  
How do humans perceive and interpret physical sound?
- The environment and sound:  
How does sound change in various environments?  
How do the different environments affect perception?
- The organization of sound:  
How does the simple organization of sound become music?

### Topic A: The physics and perception of sound

#### Suggested Instructional Ideas

To begin a study of music, the first concept that must be understood is sound. This includes the physics of the production of sound and how it is perceived by the listener.

#### Suggested Aims

1. What is sound?
2. What are the characteristics of various waveforms?
3. What is amplitude? frequency? velocity? wavelength? phase? harmonic content? envelope?
4. How do we measure the various characteristics of a waveform?
5. What are the parts of the ear and how do they function?
6. How does the brain decipher and interpret sounds that the ears sense?
7. How are reflection and diffraction critical components of sound design?
8. What is auditory perception?
9. How are sound effects used in music?
10. How do sounds affect human emotions?
11. How do composers use instruments and voices to portray scenes and events?

#### Music Examples

Peter Ilyich Tchaikovsky	<i>1812 Overture</i>
Camille Saint-Saens	<i>Carnival of Animals</i>
Alexander Borodin	<i>In the Steppes of Central Asia</i>
Paul Dukas	<i>The Sorcerer's Apprentice</i>
Aaron Copland	<i>El Salon Mexico</i>
Modest Mussorgsky	<i>Pictures at an Exhibition</i>
Serge Prokofiev	<i>Peter and the Wolf</i>
Antonio Vivaldi	<i>The Four Seasons</i>

Leroy Anderson	“Sleigh Ride”
Claude Debussy	<i>La Mer</i>
Ferde Grofé	<i>Grand Canyon Suite</i>
Arthur Honegger	<i>Pacific 23</i>
Hector Berlioz	<i>Symphonie Fantastique</i>
John Cage	<i>TV Koln</i>
John Cage	Sonatas and Interludes
George Crumb	<i>Night of the Four Moons</i>
Krzysztof Penderecki	<i>Threnody</i>
Edgard Varese	<i>Hyperprism</i>
Ted Machover	<i>Bug-Mudra</i>
Steve Reich	<i>Electric Counterpoint</i>
Shangri-Las	“The Leader of the Pack”
Edgar Winter	“Frankenstein”
Billy Joel	“Movin’ Out”
Wayne Carson Thomson	“The Letter” (The Box Tops)
Jon Anderson and Chris Squier	“Roundabout” (Yes)
Roger Waters and David Gilmour	<i>Dark Side of the Moon</i> (Pink Floyd)
John Lennon, Paul McCartney	<i>Sgt. Pepper's Lonely Hearts Club Band</i> (Beatles)

Unit 1 – Science and Perception: Exploring Sound *continued*

**Suggested Outcomes**

Students will:

- recognize and differentiate definite from indefinite pitched sounds.
- understand and utilize acoustical physics terminology.
- explain the appropriateness of sound effects in musical compositions.
- understand how all sounds set the mood of a piece of music or the scene of a movie or a play.
- recognize differences in the characteristics of sound including subtle differences in amplitude, frequency, velocity, wavelength, phase, harmonic content, and envelope.
- develop a “sound” composition.
- use the appropriate devices and formulas to measure each of the waveform characteristics.
- explain how the ear functions and recognize maladies that affect human hearing.

**Learning Opportunities That Enhance Literacy**

- Have students categorize all of the sounds in a given environment by creating a sound chart listing all of the sounds in that particular environment.
- Ask the class to write reports analyzing all of the sounds in a favorite piece of music or the opening scene of a movie or play.
- Begin the listening logs and have students report to the class on the use of sound.
- Tell students to compare and contrast all of the characteristics of waveforms in a short paragraph.
- Have students research the human ear and give an oral presentation describing how the various parts of the ear function.
- Ask each student to write a report on some aspect of sound using the vocabulary words.

**Unit 1 Vocabulary**

Acoustics	Envelope	Period	Tone color
Ambience	Force	Phase	Ultrasound
Amplitude	Formants	Physicist	Velocity
Anechoic chamber	Frequency	Pitch	Vibration
Attack	Fundamental	Pure tone	Watt
Beats	Harmonic content	Rarefaction	Waveform
Cents	Harmonics	Reflected sound	Wavelength
Chorus effect	Hertz	Resonance	White noise
Combination tones	Infrasound	Reverberation	Wolf tone
Complex tone	Intensity	Sawtooth wave	
Compression	Interference	Sine wave	
Cycle	Linear	Sound	
Decay	Loudness	Sound absorption	
Decibel	Masking	Sound envelope	
Delay	Medium	Sound waves	
Difference tone	Mono chord	Subjective tones	
Diffraction	Nodes	Summation tone	
Doppler effect	Nonlinear	Sustain	
	Oscillation	Threshold	
	Oscilloscope	Timbre	
	Overtone	Tone	
	Panning		
	Partials		



## Unit 2 – What Are We Listening For? The Elements of Music

### Rationale

The elements of music are the basic building blocks through which we are able to write, read and reproduce the sounds we call music. The major goal of this unit is to give students the tools they need to learn “how to listen” to a piece of music critically and how to articulate what they hear with correct musical terminology. The elements of rhythm, melody, harmony, form and tone color will be covered.

### Instructional Objectives

*Students will:*

- explore the earliest use of rhythm.
- learn how rhythm has progressed through the ages.
- differentiate between melody and harmony.
- learn different types of music notation.
- recognize the staff and its uses.
- be able to recognize basic forms of classical, popular and world music.
- be able to recognize the tone quality of selected instruments and discuss how they contribute to the sound of the orchestra or any ensemble.
- explore texture in music.
- explore the emotional impact of dynamics.
- learn how to listen analytically.

### Topics and Concepts to Be Explored

- The elements of music:  
*rhythm, melody, harmony, form, tone color*
- Listening with a critical ear:  
*What does all music have in common?*  
*How can we articulate the differences?*  
*How do you listen for the sound of a single instrument in a large ensemble?*  
*How can you describe the main idea of an instrumental piece of music?*  
*What is a conversation between instruments?*

*What does music add to a lyric?*

*Why does some music make you want to move?*

*How do you write a tune?*

- Developing a musical vocabulary:  
*How does one begin to speak the language of music?*  
*Why is it important to use specific terms when describing music?*  
*What is the role of the composer and how does he or she tell us what to play?*

### Unit 2 Vocabulary

Accents	Duple meter	Polyphony	Syncopation
Augmented	Dynamics	Pulse	Tempo
Beat	Form	Repetition	Texture
Cadence	Half step Harmony	Rest	Tone color
Chords	Hook	Rhythm	Tonic
Color	Interval	Scale	Triple meter
Consonance	Inversion	Sequence	Up/Ascending
Crescendo	Legato	Staccato	Whole step
Diminished	Major	Step	
Diminuendo	Melody	Style	
Dissonance	Meter	Sub-dominant	
Dominant	Minor		
Down/Descending	Motif		
	Orchestration		
	Ostinato		

Unit 2 – What Are We Listening For? The Elements of Music *continued*

**Topic A: Exploring Rhythm**

**Suggested Instructional Idea**

Rhythm is the organization of musical thought placed in time. Throughout the ages rhythm has functioned as a structural element expressing the underlying feeling of music. In most popular music rhythm is used to break up a steady beat.

**Suggested Aims**

1. What are some of the important concepts and characteristics of rhythm?
  - Pulse
  - Meter
  - Silence (rests)
  - Duration
  - Beat
  - Patterns
  - Accents
  - Syncopation
2. How can we trace the use of rhythm through the ages?
3. How does rhythm affect the performer and the listener?
4. How do specific rhythms help define styles of music?
5. How do musicians use various forms of notation to express musical thought?

**Musical Examples**

Igor Stravinsky	<i>The Rite of Spring</i>
Maurice Ravel	<i>Rapsodie Espagnole</i> ("Malaguena")
Leonard Bernstein	<i>Candide</i>
Wolfgang Mozart	<i>Piano Concerto No.20*</i>
Viento de Agua	<i>Festa de Plena</i> (GBB)*
Duke Ellington	<i>C-Jam Blues</i>
Carlos Santana	<i>Oye Como Va</i>
Toure Kunda	<i>Cindy</i>
CASYM(Steel Orchestra)	<i>My Time</i> (GBB)*
Grandmaster Flash and the Furious Five	<i>The Message</i>
Eileen Ivers	<i>Crowley's/Jackson's</i> (GBB)*
Orlando Rios	<i>Yesa</i> (GBB)*
Jimmy Jam, Terry Lewis, Janet Jackson 1814	<i>Rhythm Nation</i> (Janet Jackson)
Jose Quezada y Los Cinco Diablos	<i>Cana Brava</i> (GBB)*
Frisner Augustin	<i>Rara Processional</i> (GBB)*

\*Found on CD *Global Beat of the Boroughs*

**Suggested Outcomes**

*Students will:*

- recognize the role rhythm plays in music both structurally and emotionally.
- listen to and analyze the use of rhythm in a specific example.
- identify and describe the rhythmic interaction that takes place between musicians.
- utilize traditional rhythmic notation.
- create and notate their own rhythm pieces.

**Learning Opportunities That Enhance Literacy**

- Ask the students to select a piece of music and write an analysis of the rhythms of the piece.
- Teach the class standard notation and have them practice writing whole notes, half notes, quarter notes and eighth notes. Have the class compose one- or two-measure rhythm pieces, and perform them.
- Have students write an entry in their listening log that describes the use of rhythm in a selected piece of music.

**Reading Guide for Teachers**

<i>Rhythm and Tempo</i>	Curt Sachs
<i>The Rhythmic Structure of Music</i>	Grosvenor Cooper and Leonard B. Meyer
<i>Rhythm, Music and Education</i>	Emile Jaques-Dalcroze
<i>Latin Rhythms for Drums and Timbales</i>	Ted Reed
<i>Basic Drumming</i>	Joel Rothman
<i>How to Play Latin American Instruments</i>	Humberto Morales and Henry Adler
<i>The Performing Percussionist</i>	James Coffin
<i>Odd Time Reading</i>	Louis Bellson and Gil Breines

Unit 2 – What Are We Listening For? The Elements of Music *continued*

**Tips from the Pros:  
Listening Examples for Meter**

**2 Beat**

Peter Ilych Tchaikovsky  
“Dance of the Sugar Plum Fairy”  
*The Nutcracker*  
Old Folk Song  
“This Old Man”

**3 Beat**

Franz Schubert  
*Symphony No. 8 (Unfinished)*, 1st and 2nd movements  
Francis Scott Key  
“The Star-Spangled Banner”

**4 Beat**

Camille Saint-Saens “Introduction,”  
“March of the Lions”  
*Carnival of the Animals*  
E. Y. “Yip” Harburg and Harold Arlen  
“Somewhere Over the Rainbow”

**5 Beat**

Gustav Holst  
“Mars,” “Neptune”  
*The Planets*  
Dave Brubeck  
“Take Five”

**6 Beat**

Edvard Grieg  
“Morning Mood,”  
*Peer Gynt Suite*  
Traditional  
“Row Row Row Your Boat”

**7 Beat**

Leonard Bernstein  
Overture from *Candide*  
David Gilmour and Roger Waters  
“Money” (*Pink Floyd*)  
Neil Peart  
“Spirit of Radio” (*Rush*)

**12/8**

Frederich Handel  
*Pastoral Symphony*  
Fred Parris  
“In The Still Of the Night” (*The Five Satins*)  
Sam Cooke  
“You Send Me”

**Changing Meter**

Igor Stravinsky  
*The Rite of Spring*  
Aaron Copland  
*Appalachian Spring*  
Jon Anderson and Chris Squire  
“Perpetual Change” (*Yes*)

Unit 2 – What Are We Listening For? The Elements of Music *continued*

**Topic B: Exploring Melody**

**Suggested Instructional Idea**

By combining the elements of pitch and rhythm, the larger element of melody is produced. Melody is a series of single pitches produced in a rhythm which make up a musical idea. In traditional notation it is represented horizontally. The melody (tune) is often the most memorable and unique aspect of a piece of music.

**Suggested Aims**

1. What are some of the important concepts and characteristics of melody?
  - pitch
  - whole steps and half steps
  - intervals
  - ascending and descending scales
  - melodic rhythm
  - phrase
  - motif
  - melodic cadence
  - contour, range and structure
2. How do composers use notation to express melody?
3. How are melodic structures similar and different in various cultures?
4. How do composers transform a single idea into an interesting composition?

**Musical Examples**

Wolfgang Mozart	<i>Allegretto</i> (Twinkle Twinkle) <i>Piano Sonatas</i> , K. 284, K. 309
Ludwig van Beethoven	<i>Für Elise</i> <i>Eroica Symphony</i>
John Newton, James P. Correll, David Clayton	“Amazing Grace”
Stevie Wonder	“Another Star”
E. Y. “Yip” Harburg and Harold Arlen	“Somewhere Over the Rainbow”
John Lennon and Paul McCartney	“Yesterday” ( <i>Beatles</i> )
Ary Barosso	”Brasil” ( <i>Gilberto Gil</i> )
James “Sugarboy” Crawford	“Iko Iko” ( <i>Professor Longhair</i> )
Traditional Chinese music	<i>Xing Jie</i> (Music from China) (GBB)*
Frederic Chopin	<i>The Minute Waltz</i>
Besim Muriqi	<i>Kangé Majekrahi</i> (GBB)*
Boogsie Sharp	“My Time” ( <i>CASYM</i> )(GBB)*
Simon Shaheen	“Olive Harvest” ( <i>Simon Shaheen and Qantara</i> ) (GBB)*
Traditional	Irish Tunes ( <i>Cherish the Ladies</i> )(GBB)*
Nikolai Rimsky-Korsakov	<i>Flight of the Bumble Bee</i>
Camille Saint-Saens	“The Swan,” <i>Carnival of the Animals</i>
Fernando Osorio & Sergio George	“La Negra Tiene Tombao” ( <i>Celia Cruz</i> )

\*Found on CD *New York City: Global Beat of the Boroughs*

**Suggested Outcomes**

*Students will:*

- use musical terminology to discuss melody.
- compare melodies played on a variety of instruments.
- be able to recognize the major, minor, blues, and pentatonic scales.
- utilize traditional staff notation.
- recognize varied melodic structures.
- evaluate and describe melodies of various complexities.

**Learning Opportunities That Enhance Literacy**

- Have the students analyze the melody of a selected piece of music and write a description of it.
- Tell the class to write entries in their listening log that describe the use of melody in a selected piece of music.
- Ask the students to compose a simple melody that can be performed.
- Have the class compose lyrics to an existing melody.

**Reading Guide for Teachers**

<i>The Art of Melody</i>	Arthur C. Edwards
<i>A Textbook of Melody</i>	Joseph Smith van Waesberghe
<i>The Evolution of Melody</i>	Thomas Dunhill



## Unit 2 – What Are We Listening For? The Elements of Music *continued*

### Tips from the Pros: Pitch

*Materials needed:* Bring in a small-necked bottle filled not quite to the top with a colored liquid, not water, so it can be seen. Also have a paper cup to use as a receptacle to pour off some. Bring in a strong thick rubber band that has been cut so it is one long strand.

*Procedure:* Take the bottle of liquid and blow across it as you would a flute. Tell the students you are now going to pour off some liquid and do so. Ask them what will happen to the sound as you blow across it. Some may say it will get higher and some may say it will get lower. Stimulate discussion as to “why” for each of the two possible answers. Discuss the concept of the sound vibrating through the air, and the more air the sound has to vibrate through, the lower the **pitch**. Pour off some liquid and blow through the bottle again to prove it. Gradually pour back the liquid, blowing through the bottle after each small pour, and you can practically play an ascending scale if you gauge it correctly. Point out that a flute works the same way. If all the holes are covered, the air has a longer column through which to travel and as each finger gradually uncovers a hole, the **pitch** gets higher.

Ask a student to hold one end of the rubber band. Tighten the tension by pulling on your end. Then pluck the rubber band. Let the students notice the vibrations, first by sight. Ask if they can count how many times it vibrated in one second. Obviously it vibrated too fast for them to count. Pull the rubber band tighter and tighter (up to a point) plucking it with each pull. Ask them to listen carefully. What happens as the rubber band gets tighter (the **pitch** goes up) and as it gets looser (the **pitch** gets lower). Explain that this is how stringed instruments (even the piano) are tuned. The tighter the tension, the higher the **pitch**, the looser the tension the lower the **pitch**.

Finally find specific examples of music to play showing **pitch** rising (like “Doe a Deer” from *The Sound of Music*) and falling (“Joy to the World”, the first eight notes of which are a descending scale). Find other longer examples to illustrate the rise and fall of **pitch** within the context of a melody.

Unit 2 – What Are We Listening For? The Elements of Music *continued*

**Topic C: Exploring Harmony**

**Suggested Instructional Idea**

Harmony describes the simultaneous sounding of two or more notes to produce chords, and the function of chords in musical progressions. Chords are traditionally represented vertically. Functional harmony is represented both horizontally and vertically.

**Suggested Aims**

- How do each of these important concepts add to the understanding of harmony?
  - consonance and dissonance
  - qualities of triads
  - tonic-dominant relationships
  - harmonic patterns (e.g., I-IV-V, ii-V-I, I-vi-ii-V)
- How do chords work together to tell a musical story of tension and release?
- How is harmony created by polyphony?
- How do musicians notate harmonic movement?

**Recommended Listening:**

Ludwig van Beethoven	<i>Fifth Symphony</i>
Jerry Lieber and Mike Stoller	“Kansas City”
Franz Schubert	<i>Symphony No. 5</i>
Duke Ellington	<i>The Queen Suite</i>
Bob Marley	“Three Little Birds”
Rev. Timothy Wright	“Everything Will Be All Right” (GBB)*
The Isley Brothers	“Twist and Shout” ( <i>Beatles</i> )
Jose Quezada y Los Cinco Diablos	“Cana Brava” (GBB)*
Johann Sebastian Bach	<i>Chorales Inventions</i>
Wynton Marsalis	“In Gabriel’s Garden”
Aaron Copland	<i>Fanfare for the Common Man</i>
Klaus Meine	“Winds of Change” ( <i>Scorpions</i> )
Beverly Ross, Tony Powers and Stan Vincent	“Remember When” ( <i>Larry Chance and The Earls</i> )

\*Found on CD *New York City: Global Beat of the Boroughs*

**Suggested Outcomes**

*Students will:*

- distinguish between a tonic and a dominant chord.
- explain why a tonic chord feels like “home” and a dominant feels like “going home.”
- build a chord from scale tones.
- distinguish major and minor triads.  
(For example, 1,3,5 vs 2,4,6)
- recognize simple chord progressions:  
(I-VI-II-V) (I-IV-V-I) etc.
- describe how consonant and dissonant harmony affect the mood of a piece.
- categorize pieces that contain simple and complex harmony.

**Learning Opportunities That Enhance Literacy**

- If guitars are available, students should learn how to play I-IV-V on a guitar. Conduct the students and sing a few of the many songs that utilize those chords. The same activity is possible with keyboards.
- Pick a piece of music and have the class analyze and discuss the harmony using musical terminology.
- Ask the students to prepare a short written analysis of an eight-bar piece of music.

**Reading Guide for Teachers**

<i>Harmony</i>	Walter Piston
<i>A Concentrated Course in Traditional Harmony</i>	Paul Hindemith
<i>The Joy of Music</i>	Leonard Bernstein
<i>Harmonic Practise</i>	Roger Sessions
<i>Jazz Piano</i>	Mark Levine
<i>The Lydian Chromatic Concept of Tonal Organization and Improvisation</i>	George Russell
<i>Twentieth-Century Harmony</i>	Vincent Persichetti

Unit 2 – What Are We Listening For? The Elements of Music *continued*

**Topic D: Exploring Form**

**Suggested Instructional Idea**

Form defines order and structure in music. Entire pieces as well as individual elements of music can have structural definitions.

**Suggested Aims**

- How do these concepts create order and form in music?
  - rhythmic phrase
  - cadence
  - repetition
  - contrast
  - motive
  - theme
  - hook
  - ostinato
  - sequence
  - melodic phrase
  - harmonic progressions
- What larger groupings help to define the form of a piece?
  - Classical (i.e., fugue, rondo, binary, ternary, sonata, tone row, theme and variation).
  - Sectional jazz, blues, and pop forms (i.e., AABA, 12 bars, verse/chorus).
  - World music (montuno, raga, call-and-response, taksim, dhun, saltones).
  - How do we recognize specific musical forms?

**Musical Examples:**

Duke Ellington	<i>Concerto for Cootie</i>
Ludwig van Beethoven	<i>Moonlight Sonata</i>
Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart	<i>Symphony in G minor, Piano Sonata No. 2</i>
Charlie Parker	“Parker’s Mood”
Ravi Shankar	Indian Ragas
Meade Lux Lewis	“Honky Tonk Train Blues”
George Gershwin	“I’ve Got Rhythm”
Thelonious Monk	“Bag’s Groove”
Bessie Smith	“Lost Your Head Blues”
Moses Hogan	“Battle of Jericho”
Los Pleneros de la 21	“Campo”*
Arnold Schoenberg	Opus 16, Five Orchestral Pieces
Grigoris Maninakis	“Kokkino Gramman” *
Yuri Yunakov Ensemble	“Coley Manhattan”
Traditional Mexican Folksong	“La Bamba” ( <i>Richie Valens, Los Lobos</i> )
Gustav Holst	<i>The Planets</i>

\*Found on CD *New York City: Global Beat of the Boroughs*

**Suggested Outcomes**

*Students will:*

- recognize a melodic or rhythmic phrase.
- listen to and analyze some classical dance forms such as the rondo.
- listen to and analyze symphonic forms.
- listen to, recognize, and analyze compositional forms from all over the world.
- listen to, recognize, and analyze jazz and popular song forms.
- compose simple instrumental or vocal songs focusing on strict form.

**Learning Opportunities That Enhance Literacy**

- Have students write an analysis of the forms of selected pieces of music of various periods and styles.
- Ask the class to write entries in their listening logs emphasizing the differences in form of selected pieces of music.
- Play a selected piece of music for the students and have a discussion of harmony using musical terminology. Make sure each student contributes.

**Reading Guide for Teachers**

<i>Form in Music</i>	Wallace Berry
<i>Musical Form and Musical Performance</i>	Edward T. Cone
<i>Sonata Forms</i>	Charles Rosen
<i>Inside the Brazilian Rhythm Section</i>	Cliff Korman & Nelson Farla

Unit 2 – What Are We Listening For? The Elements of Music *continued*

**Tips from the Pros: Theme and Variations**

Write the word “chicken” on the board. Ask the students how many ways they can think of to cook chicken. Some answers will probably be: baked, fried, sauteed, Bar-B-Q, roasted, etc. With some probing and a bit of thinking other types of chicken preparation can be solicited as well. No matter which way it is prepared, it is still chicken. That is the **theme**. The different preparations are the **variations**. Repeat the process with “shirt.” Ask the students to look around the room and describe how shirts can be different: color, size, pullover vs. button, long sleeve vs. short sleeve, material, etc. Again “shirt” is the **theme** and the ways they are different are the **variations**. (Other possible **themes** can be “car,” “book,” etc.)

Play a simple tune at the piano such as “Three Blind Mice.” Play it again and vary the pitch, tempo, dynamics, add harmony, change the rhythm, the meter, etc. Ask “What is the **theme**?” Point out that the main melody is the **theme** and the various changes in the musical elements are the **variations**. Then pick a bona fide piece of music which is written in the form **Theme and Variations** such as *American Salute* by Morton Gould (Variations on “When Johnny Comes Marching Home”), “Variations on ‘America’” by Charles Ives, “Russian Sailors Dance” from *The Red Poppy* by Glière, or any number of other short pieces written in that form. Let the students count how many times the **theme** is varied and which musical elements are varied in the different **variations**.

**Tips from the Pros: Fugue**

Ask the students if they know what a “fugitive” is. The response to be solicited is that a fugitive is someone who is running from the law. Why is he running? Because someone is chasing him. The word “fugitive” comes from the Latin root *fugar* which means “to flee.”

Present the students with the following sentence: “When I woke up this morning I had some orange juice for breakfast.” (Any sentence of reasonable length will do.) Ask a student to say that sentence slowly. Pick a second student and say that when you point to him/her, (s)he should say the same sentence. Ask the first person to say that sentence. When (s)he gets to “I had some orange juice...” point to the 2nd person to start. Be sure the first person keeps going to the end. Repeat with a 3rd and a 4th person. The various vocal entries should look and sound something like this:

1. When I woke up this morning, I had some orange juice for breakfast.
2. When I woke up this morning, I had some orange juice for...
3. When I woke up this morning, I had some...
4. When I woke up this...

Outline what they have been saying on the board and explain that the first entry is called the subject. (In strict fugal nomenclature, the 2nd entry is called the answer, the 3rd is the subject and the 4th is the answer again. One can call all the entries the “subject” because they are, in fact, all on the same “subject.”) Point out that even though the students are saying the same thing, because they started at different times, it sounds like they are saying different things (polyphonic).

Then proceed and play the subject of a musical fugue. An excellent choice would be “Little Fugue in G Minor” by Bach. Play the subject on the piano starting on various pitches so the students can get used to hearing it that way. Ultimately a fugue is a special kind of Theme and Variations. They can count how many times the main subject entered and some of the musical ways in which each entry was different from a previous one.

**Tips from the Pros: Sonata-Allegro Form**

Tell the students that they are going to go on a long journey by car. Part of the time they will take the highway and part of the time they will take a scenic, but slower, side road. The highway starts in New York (Theme #1). Then they will come to a bridge (such as the George Washington Bridge). Then on the other side of the bridge they will continue their journey on a highway (Theme #2). Then there will be a detour in the road in which they will have to get off the main highway. The speed limit may be slower, but there will be some interesting scenery to see. Finally the detour will be over and they will be back on the main highway. To outline the above:

Exposition (main highway)	Development	Recapitulation
Theme 1 Bridge	Off the main highway	Back to main road
Theme 2	A musical detour	Themes 1 and 2

This should be used in conjunction with a piece in Sonata-Allegro form. An excellent choice would be the 1st movement of Mozart’s *Symphony No. 40 in G minor*.



Unit 2 – What Are We Listening For? The Elements of Music *continued*

**Topic E: Exploring Tone Color**

**Suggested Instructional Idea**

Tone color is the effect created by the musical choices of composers and/or arrangers and the interpretive choices of performers. Orchestration, dynamics, texture, arrangement and interpretation are some of the aspects of music that fall under the category of tone color. Each of these sub-categories is large and demands attention.

**Suggested Aims**

1. What are the important aspects of tone color in music?
2. What are the dynamic capabilities of musical instruments and the human voice?
3. How do the varied elements of tone color affect each other? How can orchestration effect dynamics? How can a dynamic choice impact interpretation?
4. How is an emotional response evoked by specific musical choices? For example, why is some music “sad” and other music “happy”?
5. What tools does a composer employ to create imagery through music?

**Musical Examples**

Aaron Copland	<i>Billy the Kid</i>
Peter Ilych Tchaikovsky	<i>1812 Overture</i>
Igor Stravinsky	<i>The Rite of Spring</i>
Krzysztof Penderecki	<i>Hiroshima</i>
Leonard Bernstein	<i>West Side Story</i>
Pietro Mascagni	<i>Anthem for Spring</i>
Billie Holiday	“God Bless the Child”
Scott Joplin	<i>The Entertainer</i>

Duke Ellington	<i>Diminuendo and Crescendo in Blue</i>
Oliver Nelson	<i>Blues and the Abstract Truth</i>
John Lennon/Paul McCartney	“Yellow Submarine” ( <i>Beatles</i> )
Joseph Shabalala	“Hello My Baby” (Ladysmith Black Mombazo)
Roger Waters & David Gilmour	<i>The Wall (Pink Floyd)</i>
Astor Piazzola	“El Tango,” “Decarisimo”
Joe Zawinul	“Birdland” ( <i>Weather Report, Manhattan Transfer</i> )
John Williams	<i>Star Wars</i> soundtrack
Bernard Herrmann	<i>Psycho</i> soundtrack
Ry Cooder	<i>Paris, Texas</i> soundtrack
Miles Davis	“So What” (Jazz at Lincoln Center)
Franz Waxman	<i>Sunset Boulevard</i> sound track
Max Steiner	<i>Gone With The Wind</i> soundtrack
Claude Debussy	<i>Arabesques</i>
Pete Townshend	“Free Me” ( <i>The Who</i> )
Maurice Ravel	<i>Bolero</i>

**Suggested Outcomes**

Students will:

- listen to a programmatic piece of music and discuss how the composer tells the story.
- learn to underscore some text.
- be able to musically discuss the artistic interpretive choices of the performers and the effect on the listener.

**Learning Opportunities That Enhance Literacy**

- Remind the class to continue its listening logs, emphasizing how tone color is employed in varied forms of music.
- Have the students listen to and describe the “color” of a piece of music in musical terms.
- Have the class listen to different performances of the same piece and write reports comparing and contrasting each piece.
- Have the students listen to music with variable dynamic levels and explain in writing how changes in dynamic intensity affect perceived emotion in a musical composition. **Note:** The last bullet can be successfully done with any other aspect of tone color, i.e., texture or tempo.

**Reading Guide for Teachers**

<i>The Study of Orchestration</i>	Samuel Adler
<i>Orchestration</i>	Walter Piston
<i>Arranging for the Concert Band</i>	Frank Erickson
<i>Jazz Arranging and Orchestration</i>	Leslie M. Sabina
<i>Principles of Orchestration</i>	Nikolai Rimsky-Korsakov

## Unit 2 – What Are We Listening For? The Elements of Music *continued*

### Tips from the Pros: Dynamics

*Materials needed: A piano*

*Procedure:* Point to the piano and ask the students to give the full name of this instrument. They will look at you as if you're a little crazy and they will answer, "It's a piano." You then respond, "That's half credit." Continue with, "Does anyone know the full name of this instrument? 'Piano' is only half the name." They probably will not be able to answer.

The next step is to explain a forerunner of the "piano," the harpsichord. Open the lid of the piano, step on the damper pedal, reach in and pluck one of the strings. Explain that a harpsichord (from "harp" and "chord") used a mechanism which literally plucked each string, like a harp, to get a sound. An Italian by the name of Bartolomeo Cristofori invented an improvement on the harpsichord in the early 1700s. He invented a device which would hit or strike the piano strings. Use a finger of one hand to make a plucking motion against a finger of the other hand. Then make a fist and strike the fingers of the other hand. Ask which one had more power. It's obvious that hitting the strings has more power than plucking them. One can hit them lightly for a soft sound, and hit them stronger for a louder sound. Mr. Cristofori called his invention a "soft loud" since it could play soft and loud. However, he was Italian so he called it a "soft-loud" in Italian, namely a "pianoforte." Over the years, the name became shortened to just "piano," the name we use today.

It is from this information that our system of notating dynamics developed. Explain that "p" stands for "piano" which means soft and "f" stands for "forte" which means loud. Doubling up the "p" to "pp" means "very soft" and "ff" means "very loud." Using an "m" before a "p" or an "f" such as "mp" or "mf" means 1/2 soft or 1/2 loud, as "m" stands for "mezzo" which means "half." One can then go on to use musical examples which illustrate the various levels of dynamics.

## Unit 3 – The Human Instrument: Vocal Music

### Rationale

Through listening, participation, and analysis this unit will introduce students to the music written for and produced by the human voice. In addition, students will explore how the human body works to produce a vocal sound, understand the different qualities of voices and listen to and analyze vocal music from all over the world.

### Instructional Objectives

Students will:

- be able to identify the ranges of the human voice.
- understand the mechanics of the human voice.
- listen to and analyze vocal music from around the world.
- begin to understand the function of the solo voice in different cultures.
- compare and contrast the stylistic differences between an aria and a popular song.
- gain an understanding of the variety of works written for the vocal ensemble and chorus.
- explore the role of singing as part of worship.
- trace the history of singing in the theater including pre-opera, opera, operetta, musical theater and beyond.
- analyze popular songs and discuss their place in vocal music history.
- discuss the emotional impact of singing as a community.
- analyze how songs from different cultures can inspire ideas and even effect social change.
- compare and contrast vocal music on local New York radio stations.
- analyze how text affects music and how music affects text.

### Topics and Concepts to Be Explored

- Types of voices  
*What are the different kinds of male voices? What are the different kinds of female voices?*
- Vocal production  
*What is the science of vocal production?  
Why is breathing correctly so important to good singing?  
What differentiates a pop voice from an operatic voice?  
What are some other kinds of vocal sounds found in music from around the world?  
How are phrasing and breathing related?*
- Music for solo voice  
*How has the solo voice been used throughout history?  
In some cultures how has the role of historian or storyteller been elevated to a vocal art form?  
What are some of the different vocal qualities that can be produced by a solo human voice?*
- Music for small ensemble  
*How has ensemble singing been used in societies throughout the world?  
What is a duet, a trio, a quartet, etc.  
What are some of the styles of music that utilize the small ensemble?*
- Choral music  
*How has choral music developed through history? In the West? In the East?  
How do choral composers achieve particular artistic goals?  
Who are the great choral composers ?  
What is the difference between an SATB, SAT and SAB chorus?*
- Opera and operetta  
*What is an operatic topic?  
Who are some of the great opera composers?  
How do operetta and opera differ?  
What are the musical elements found in an opera or operetta?*

### Unit 3 Vocabulary

Alto	Lyrics
Anatomy	Madrigals
Aria	Madrigals
Art Song	Opera
Bass	Oratorios
Blues	Polyphony
Breath control	Popular music
Call-and-response	Posture
Canon	Religious
Chest voice	Rock
Choir	Rock opera
Chorus	Rounds
Coluratura	Secular
Diaphragm	Soloist
Falsetto	Soprano
Gospel	Spiritual
Head voice	Tenor
Jazz	Tone quality
Libretto	Western classical music
Lieder	World music

Unit 3 – The Human Instrument: Vocal Music *continued*

**Topic A: Vocal Production**

**Suggested Instructional Idea**

The human body has its own instrument - the singing voice. By understanding the science of the production of the human voice, and with specific training and practice, controlled and varied sounds can be produced.

**Suggested Aims**

1. What is the science of vocal production?
2. How is a good vocal sound produced?
3. What are the soprano, alto, tenor, baritone, and bass voices?

**Musical Examples**

Besim Muriq	<i>Kange Majekrahi</i> (GBB)*
Franz Schubert	<i>Schubert Lieder</i> (Marian Anderson)
J. Strachey, H. Marvell, H. Link	“These Foolish Things” (Billie Holiday)
Manny Oquenda	<i>Oquenda y Libre</i> (GBB)*
Rev. Timothy Wright	<i>Everything Will Be Alright</i> (GBB)*

\*Found on CD *New York City: Global Beat of the Boroughs*

**Suggested Outcomes**

*Students will:*

- show an understanding of how the human anatomy works to produces a vocal sound.
- understand muscle and breath control.
- understand the different type of vocal sounds that can be produced.
- be able to explain the differences between operatic and popular vocal styles.
- recognize soprano, alto, tenor, baritone and bass voices.

**Learning Opportunities That Enhance Literacy**

- Students will work in small groups and record themselves or another group performing a vocal piece. They will write critiques of the class performances.
- Each student will read a short paragraph and then the class will discuss where to place that student’s voice (bass, baritone, tenor, alto or soprano).
- Have students draw and label a simple diagram of the parts of the human anatomy that work together to produce the singing voice.

**Reading Guide for Teachers**

Note: This reading list applies to the entire unit.

<i>Great Singers on the Art of Singing</i>	Harriet Brower, James Francis Cooke (eds.)
<i>How to Sing</i>	Lili Lehmann, Richard Aldrich (trans.)
<i>Teaching the Mechanical Art of Song</i>	Celeste Reese Watson
<i>Caruso and the Art of Singing</i>	Salvator Fucito and Barnet J. Beyer
<i>Choral Music: Methods and Materials</i>	Barbara A. Brinson



Unit 3 – The Human Instrument: Vocal Music *continued*

**Topic B: Music for Solo Voice**

**Suggested Instructional Idea**

Singing and singers have been a major part of every culture throughout history. Vocalists have played different roles in different cultures. In some, the solo voice is part of the religion, and in others it is a major form of entertainment.

**Suggested Aims**

1. Why do some people consider the human voice to be the purest instrument?
2. What is the role of the solo vocalist in different cultures?
3. What is the role of the solo vocalist in different styles of music?
4. How have written vocal compositions changed throughout history (Palestrina to Schubert; Foster to Porter to Wonder)?

**Musical Examples**

Many composers	<i>Opera’s Greatest Moments (Domingo, Caballe, Lanza)</i>
Besim Muriqi	“Kanghe Majekrahi” (GBB)*
Viento de Agua	<i>Fiesta de Plena</i> (GBB)*
P. Caccavale, A.Rosalia, P. Ferrara	<i>Neopolitan Song (Phil Valli Orchestra)</i> (GBB)*
Cole Porter	“You’d Be So Nice to Come Home To” (Ella Fitzgerald)
Gustav Mahler	<i>4th Symphony</i> , 4th movement
Marvin Gaye	“What’s Goin’ On?”
Bruce Springsteen	“Born to Run”
Willie Nelson	“Crazy” ( <i>Patsy Cline</i> )

\*Found on CD *New York City: Global Beat of the Boroughs*

**Suggested Outcomes**

*Students will:*

- listen to, respond to, and recognize the music of different eras and different cultures.
- understand the role of the soloist as storyteller.
- analyze lyrics and melody and begin to discuss the emotional impact of music on words.
- understand the role of the soloist in religious settings.

**Learning Opportunities That Enhance Literacy**

- Play an operatic selection, a popular selection, and a world music selection and have the students write about the different vocal qualities they hear in each selection. Have them describe how each piece makes them feel.
- Ask students to write a vocal piece with lyrics.
- Have the students write a book report on the biography of a singer. If you wish you may limit students by genre or era.

Unit 3 – The Human Instrument: Vocal Music *continued*

**Topic C: Music for Small Vocal Ensemble**

**Suggested Instructional Idea**

A small vocal ensemble consists of several singers performing together. The group can be as small as a duet or as large as a small chorus.

**Suggested Aims**

1. How has ensemble singing been used in societies throughout the world?
2. What kinds of vocal harmonies are generally found in:
  - a. popular music?
  - b. Western classical music?
  - c. world music?
3. What kind of vocal compositional techniques are used in those three genres?
4. What musical choices can help to illustrate the text of a choral piece?
5. How is the melody arranged in varied pieces?
6. How can instrumental accompaniment help define a choral piece?

**Musical Examples**

Smokey Robinson	“Get Ready” ( <i>The Temptations</i> )
Holland-Dozier-Holland	“Where Did Our Love Go?” ( <i>The Supremes</i> )
Don Rose, Hughie Prince	“Boogie Woogie Bugle Boy” ( <i>Andrew Sisters</i> )
John Taylor, George Davis	“Boy From New York City” ( <i>Manhattan Transfer</i> )
John Wilbye	“Adew (Adieu) Sweet Amarillis”
Pointer Sisters	“I Need You”
Joseph Shambalala	“Hello My Dear” ( <i>Ladysmith Black Mombazo</i> )
The Corporation	“ABC” ( <i>Jackson 5</i> )

**Suggested Outcomes**

*Students will:*

- articulate in musical terms the stylistic variations of different vocal works.
- analyze the texts of different pieces and describe their musical settings.
- recognize different vocal harmonies found in small vocal ensemble works from around the world.

**Learning Opportunities That Enhance Literacy**

- Students will write a comparison of various vocal ensembles (e.g., The Temptations with the Andrews Sisters; madrigal singers with Lambert, Hendricks, and Ross).
- Have students bring in a favorite recording of a current ensemble and give a two-minute oral report analyzing the various aspects of the recording. The aspects should include melody, accompaniment, and lyric content.
- Have students compare two recordings of the same piece of music to determine how the musical decisions of the composer, arrangers and/or performers affect the emotional impact of the music. Ask the students to write their ideas in a report about each recording.

Unit 3 – The Human Instrument: Vocal Music *continued*

**Topic D: Choral Music**

**Suggested Instructional Idea**

A choral ensemble is like an orchestra of voices, giving composers or performers the opportunity to create different colors or timbres. This allows choral music to perform different functions from religious to patriotic.

**Suggested Aims**

1. What are some traditional ways of grouping voices within choruses?
  - a. SATB (soprano, alto, tenor, baritone)
  - b. SAT
  - c. SAB
2. What is the effect of harmony in a piece of choral music?
3. Why is group unison so powerful when used appropriately?
4. What are some compositional techniques used by composers and arrangers to begin a piece of music?

**Musical Examples**

Ludwig van Beethoven	<i>9th Symphony</i>
J.S. Bach	<i>Jesu, Joy of Man's Desiring</i>
Rev. Timothy Wright	"Everything Will Be Alright" (GBB)*
Frederic Handel	<i>Messiah</i>
Michael Jackson	"Man in the Mirror"
Carl Orff	<i>Carmina Burana</i> ("O Fortuna")

\*Found on CD *New York City: Global Beat of the Boroughs*

**Suggested Outcomes**

*Students will:*

- understand how an arrangement expands the melody or theme to create a piece of music.
- be able to articulate the differences and similarities between selected choral pieces.
- be able to follow the thematic path of a choral work.
- understand that choral music can be used to create emotional responses (e.g., a church choir, or a military chorus).
- perform a simple choral piece.

**Learning Opportunities That Enhance Literacy**

- Have students listen to and write an analysis of the lyrics of a piece of choral music, describing how the music conveys the meaning of the words.
- Have students compare and contrast two pieces of choral music – one *a capella* and one accompanied. They should explain, in writing, why they prefer one or the other.

Unit 3 – The Human Instrument: Vocal Music *continued*

**Topic E: Opera and Operetta**

**Suggested Instructional Idea**

Operas were created as flashy, expensive virtuosic theater events filled with special effects. The musical elements found in opera include the overture, the arias or solos, duets, trios and quartets, as well as large choral ensembles. These are linked by recitative, which is sung prose. An operetta is usually a simpler, lighter form of musical theater.

**Suggested Aims**

1. What role does recitative play in an opera?
2. Why are the arias usually the highpoints of an opera?
3. How are arias constructed?
4. What does an overture accomplish theatrically and musically?
5. How can a specific performer add to the emotional impact of a role?
6. How do the music and libretto work together?
7. How does the orchestration affect the emotionality of the opera?
8. What do lights, costumes and set design add to an opera production?

**Musical Examples**

Gaetano Donizetti	“Una Furtiva Lagrima”
John Gay	<i>The Beggar’s Opera</i>
W. A. Mozart	<i>Le Nozze de Figaro</i>
Gioacchino Rossini	<i>Il Barbiere di Siviglia</i>
Giuseppe Verdi	<i>Otello, Aida</i>
Richard Wagner	<i>Der Ring des Nibelungen</i>
Gilbert and Sullivan	<i>HMS Pinafore</i>
George Gershwin	<i>Porgy and Bess</i>
Scott Joplin	<i>Treemonisha</i>
Giacomo Puccini	<i>La Boheme</i>
Georges Bizet	<i>Carmen</i>
Collection	<i>Opera’s Greatest Moments (BMG)*</i>
Gian Carlo Menotti	<i>Amahl and the Night Visitors</i>

\* Found in *Bertelsmann Music Group Library*

**Suggested Outcomes**

*Students will:*

- understand the use of recitative in linking the more lyrical musical moments.
- be able to explain the difference between recitative and aria.
- understand the construction of a few specific arias.
- compare movies to operas.
- become familiar with the collaboration among the composer, lyricist and librettist in constructing an opera.

**Learning Opportunities That Enhance Literacy**

- Students will listen to an aria in a foreign language without translation, write their thoughts about the meaning and then compare them to the actual text.
- To demonstrate an understanding of recitative, students will write some simple dialogue and set it to music.
- Ask the students to express, in writing, how they might have felt as a Venetian opera audience member in 1650.
- Select a patter song from a Gilbert and Sullivan operetta and compare its content to a modern rap song. Show how both focus on social issues of their day.



## Unit 3 – The Human Instrument: Vocal Music *continued*

### Tips from the Pros: Opera

*You are cordially invited to attend the wedding of  
Lucy of Lammermoor \*  
To  
Lord Arthur Bucklaw  
On  
Friday, December 6th  
At  
11:00 A.M.  
Metropolitan Opera House  
Broadway and 65th St.  
\*who is marrying against her will*

The above is a sample motivation that can be used before introducing the students to an opera experience. Notice that the word “opera” is nowhere to be found. The asterisk next to the name of Lucy of Lammermoor and its accompanying footnote usually arouse much curiosity and lead to the story of a brother who is forcing his sister to marry a rich man that she doesn’t even know, much less love. Students should be asked to write dialogues, with the boys taking the part of the brother and the girls taking the part of the sister. The best dialogues are read in class. Subsequently, this leads to a reading of the libretto. By the time the word “opera” is introduced and the music played, the students should be all ears and anxious to follow.

This procedure should be followed for any opera that is being taught. Find a hook in the story or drama and introduce the opera through that to grab the interest of the students. Then focus on how the music relates to the plot, characters and scene.

### Tips from the Pros: Spirituals

The aim of this motivation is to try to lift an oppression from the students. Just as slaves were oppressed physically, socially and emotionally, you are trying to simulate in a small way what it might feel like to the students if their oppression could be removed.

Ask the students to repeat after you:  
“No more quizzes in music class!”  
“No more homework in music class!”  
“No more tests in music class!”

(Notice the smiles that will come over their faces as they say this.) Ask how they felt as they said these statements. (You will soon have to burst their bubble and tell them, however, that those statements are not true.) Discuss with the students how during slavery, the workers did not have any hope of relieved oppression in their lifetime. There were no holidays, paid vacations, unemployment insurance or Social Security. The only hope for their salvation was in the next world. This is the source of the origin of Gospel and Spiritual Music. So many of these songs deal with meeting one’s Maker in the next world, because there was no hope for relief in this world. In addition, an important style is “Call-and-Response,” something you did at the beginning of the lesson, with the teacher as caller and the students as responders. A good musical example to follow through is a spiritual called “Certainly, Lord” by Johnson or “Soon Ah Will Be Done” by Dawson. Point out additionally that in the fields the only “instruments” slaves had available to them were their voices, and as a result an authentic spiritual has no instruments but is sung a cappella.

## Unit 4 – From Gourds to Synthesizers and Everything In Between: Instrumental Music

### Rationale

This unit should serve as an introduction to the families of instruments and to the remarkably large and diverse body of music written for, and/or performed by, soloists and small or large instrumental ensembles, around the world.

### Instructional Objectives

*Students will:*

- identify instrument families represented in a musical selection.
- identify the sounds of individual instruments within a particular family.
- examine the role of instrumental groups within varied musical ensembles.
- discuss the meaning of pitch vs. non-pitched.
- express an understanding of the history of each of the families of instruments.
- construct simple instruments.
- explain the results of a string in motion.
- describe the importance of the saxophone in jazz music.
- create and perform simple percussion pieces.
- explore the global nature of musical composition.
- explain a composer’s use of instrumentation.
- identify instruments played in modern orchestras.
- identify instruments played around the world and put them into the correct instrumental families.
- analyze the interplay of instruments within a large ensemble.
- describe the responsibility of each musician within an ensemble.

### Topics and Concepts to be Explored

- Families of Instruments  
*What are the families of instruments?  
What are the families of instruments found in a jazz big band?  
a gamelan orchestra? a salsa band? a symphony orchestra?  
How does the interaction of families of instruments parallel the  
role of families in society?*
- Music for Solo Instruments  
*What are the characteristics of music played by solo  
instruments?  
What are the forms solo music can take?  
What is the nature of accompaniment? Are instruments played  
differently when they are alone? How?  
How does the soloist communicate with the audience?*
- Music for Keyboard  
*How is sound produced by various keyboard instruments?  
What is the history of the piano?  
How is the piano/electronic keyboard used in various  
ensembles?  
Why has the music written for piano been so important in the  
history of music?*
- Music for Small Ensemble  
*What are the characteristics of small ensembles? What are octets,  
septets, sextets, quintets, trios and duos?  
What is the instrumentation commonly found in popular  
small groups today?  
How are small ensembles used in different styles of music?*
- Music for Large Ensemble  
*What is a large ensemble?  
What is the difference between an orchestra and a concert  
band?  
Which families of instruments play in different types of large  
ensembles? What are they?  
How has technology changed large ensembles?  
At what venues in New York City can you hear  
a large ensemble perform?*

NOTE: Sergei Prokofiev’s *Peter and the Wolf* and Benjamin Britten’s *Young Person’s Guide to the Orchestra* can be used as examples with all of the family of instruments topics in this unit.

### Unit 4 Vocabulary

Accordion	Ensemble	Pipa
Aeolian harp	Erhu	Pizzicato
Arco	Field drum	Raga
Arrangement	Floor tomtom	Recorder
Autoharp	Flute	Saxophone
Balalaika	French horn	Snare drum
Band	Gamelan	Sonata
Bandoneon	Gong	Steel drum
Banjo	Guitar	Surdu
Baritone horn	Harmonica	Symphony
Bass drum	Harmonium	Symphony orchestra
Bass violin	Harp	Synthesizer
Bassoon	Harpichord	Tambourine
Bata drum	Improvisation	Tango
Bongo	Instrumentation	Theme and Variations
Cadenza	Kettledrum	Timbales
Castenets	Keyboard	Triangle
Cello	Kora	Trill
Chimes	Koto	Trombone
Clarinet	Lyre	Trumpet
Clave	Maracas	Tuba
Clavichord	Marching band	Tympani
Composition	Marimba	Viola
Concert band	Melotron	Violin
Conga	Nocturne	Xylophone
Cornet	Oboe	
Cymbals	Orchestration	
Didgeridoo	Organ	
Dumbek	Pan flute	
Electric bass	Pedal steel guitar	
Electronic keyboards	Pennywhistle	
English horn	Piano	
	Piccolo	

Unit 4 – From Gourds to Synthesizers and Everything In Between: Instrumental Music *continued*

**Topic A: The String Instruments**

**Suggested Instructional Idea**

String instruments have a long history and have evolved considerably over time. Around the world, string instruments are as varied as the African kora, the electric guitar and the Bluegrass fiddle. These instruments often have a wide melodic and dynamic range. The string section is the largest in a symphony orchestra.

**Suggested Aims**

1. What is a complete definition of a string instrument?
2. How is a string instrument constructed?
3. What are the various numbers of strings on these instruments?
4. What are the two ways string instruments are played?
5. How has electronics affected the evolution of string instruments?
6. What are some of the string instruments played throughout the world?
7. What are some string instruments referred to in ancient texts?(For example, in Shakespeare, Psalms, Ovid, etc.)

**Musical Examples**

Wes Montgomery	“West Coast Blues”
Ludwig van Beethoven	<i>Fifth Symphony</i>
Jean-Baptiste Lully	<i>Marche Pour La Ceremonie des Tures</i>
Marin Marais	<i>The Bells of St. Genevieve</i>
William Lawes	<i>Suite for Two Guitars</i>
Ludwig van Beethoven	<i>Violin Concerto in D</i>
Felix Mendelssohn	<i>Violin Concerto in E</i>
Aaron Copland	<i>Appalachian Spring</i>
Traditional Irish	“Irish Fiddle” ( <i>Eileen Ivers</i> )(GBB)*

\*Found on CD *New York City: Global Beat of the Boroughs*

**Suggested Outcomes**

*Students will:*

- name and describe string instruments found throughout the world.
- name and describe the instruments in a classical string quartet and in a symphony orchestra.
- be able to discuss the history of string instruments.
- construct a simple string instrument by using a small box and rubber bands.
- review the basic laws of physics as they apply to sound produced by a string instrument.
- describe how the role of the guitar changed in music when it became electronic.

**Learning Opportunities That Enhance Literacy**

- Students will interview someone they know who has played a string instrument and present an oral report to the class.
- Have the class prepare a report comparing and contrasting one string instrument found in a classical orchestra to one found in any folk tradition.

Unit 4 – From Gourds to Synthesizers and Everything In Between: Instrumental Music *continued*

**Topic B: The Woodwind Instruments**

**Suggested Instructional Idea**

The woodwinds are a varied group of instruments. In woodwinds, sound is produced either by the vibration of a single or double reed or by the passage of a column of air over a tone hole. Woodwinds can be found in any corner of the world and are as varied as the recorder and the Chinese *sona*.

**Suggested Aims**

1. How is sound produced by the various woodwind instruments?
  - a. single reed
  - b. double reed
  - c. a simple hole to blow across
2. How did woodwinds get their name?
3. What are the many characteristics of the family members?
4. What are the various roles of woodwinds in music throughout the world?

**Musical Examples**

Palmer & Williams	“I Found A New Baby” <i>(Benny Goodman Sextet)</i>
Charlie Parker	“Koko”
Sonny Rollins	“Pent-Up House”
Charlie Parker	“Chasin’ the Bird” <i>(Jazz at Lincoln Center)</i>
Wolfgang A. Mozart	<i>Concerto in A</i>
George Gershwin	<i>Rhapsody in Blue</i>

**Suggested Outcomes**

*Students will:*

- be able to list and describe the woodwind instruments in descending order of pitch (piccolo, flute, oboe, clarinet, bass clarinet, bassoon).
- construct an oboe from a straw.
- be able to identify and explain the use of woodwind instruments from around the world.
- identify and describe the members of the saxophone family (soprano, alto, tenor, baritone) and list types of musical ensembles where they are commonly used.

**Learning Opportunities That Enhance Literacy**

- Students will research the origin of the saxophone and explain, in writing, why it is a woodwind though made of brass.
- Have a class discussion about the influence of woodwinds on jazz, including who the major artists are and what they play.
- Prepare a schedule of performances by woodwind ensembles in the area and have students report on one of these concerts.



## Unit 4 – From Gourds to Synthesizers and Everything In Between: Instrumental Music *continued*

### Tips from the Pros: Constructing an Oboe

The following can be used as a motivational tool or the body of a hands-on lesson.

*Materials Needed:*

*one pair of scissors*

*one straw per pupil (It is advised that the teacher precut the straws.)*

*Procedure:*

Flatten the straw between your thumb and first finger.

Cut the straw so you create a point like that of a sharpened pencil.

Holding the straw in both hands, place the cut end into the mouth, covering the teeth with your lips. Pinch down on the straw with the lips and blow. If no sound results put less or more of the straw into your mouth until you get a sound.

You must experiment with the depth of the straw in the mouth in order to obtain the wanted results.

Cutting many straws of various lengths will give you the chance to teach the governing laws of physics. Namely, the longer the straw the lower the sound and the shorter the straw the higher the sound. (A good opportunity to teach the word **pitch**.)

If you wish, you can cut a few holes in the front of the straw. This will allow you to play a few different notes on a single straw.

As a motivational tool, the teacher can play the straw for the class and continue from there eliciting information from students.

Questions such as:

What did you hear?

Is there a different sound when I play the shorter straw?

As the body of a lesson, the teacher can have the students cut their own straws, or provide precut ones. Allow time for each student to find the spot where a sound can be produced. Elicit information after each step of the lesson:

What did you hear?

What is sound?

Did you feel the straw vibrate?

What is the difference between a longer and shorter straw?

Can you make up a simple tune on the straw (if there are holes in it)?

Relate the experience to the sound of the oboe, English horn and bassoon. Play recordings for the class of these instruments and if possible show them the double reed necessary to play these instruments.

Unit 4 – From Gourds to Synthesizers and Everything In Between: Instrumental Music *continued*

**Topic C: The Brass Instruments**

**Suggested Instructional Idea**

The brass instruments are made of metal and represent one of the families of instruments that make up the orchestra, jazz band, salsa band, and many popular and world ensembles. Brass instruments have a long history dating back to biblical times and have been with us ever since.

**Suggested Aims**

1. What qualifies an instrument to be included as a member of the brass family?
2. How is a tone produced on a brass instrument?
3. Why do some brass instruments have valves?
4. What are the materials used to construct brass instruments around the world?
5. What are the soprano, alto, tenor and bass voices of the brass family?

**Musical Examples**

George Kleinsinger	“Tubby the Tuba” <i>(Danny Kaye, Manhattan Transfer)</i>
Leroy Anderson	“Buglers Holiday”
Wolfgang A. Mozart	<i>Horn Concerto</i>
Anton Bruckner	<i>Elektra</i>
Lil Armstrong	“Struttin’ with Some Barbecue” <i>(Louis Armstrong)</i>
George & Ira Gershwin	“Summertime” <i>(Miles Davis)</i>
John Philip Sousa	<i>Stars and Stripes Forever</i>
Dizzy Gillespie	“A Night in Tunisia” <i>(Jazz at Lincloln Center)</i>

**Suggested Outcomes**

*Students will:*

- list and describe the common brass instruments of the concert band or orchestra (trumpet, French horn, trombone, baritone horn, tuba).
- explain the history of brass instruments from their earliest use by primitive man.
- identify brass instruments used in music from around the world.
- construct a brass-type instrument using materials found in the home.

**Learning Opportunities That Enhance Literacy**

- Have the students create a chart that diagrams the history of brass instruments throughout the world.
- Ask the students to seek out the recordings of Art Farmer or Clifford Brown and write a report comparing the sound of the trumpets on these recordings with the trumpet sounds of Dizzy Gillespie and Wynton Marsalis.
- Ask the class to research and report on the use of brass instruments in functions that are not musical performances.

Unit 4 – From Gourds to Synthesizers and Everything In Between: Instrumental Music *continued*

**Topic D: The Percussion Family**

**Suggested Instructional Idea**

Sound is produced in percussion instruments by striking, scraping or shaking. Percussion instruments have both definite and indefinite pitch. The percussion instruments often provide pulse and rhythm to the music we hear.

**Suggested Aims**

1. What are percussion instruments and what were some of their earliest uses in history?
2. What is the difference between pitched and non-pitched percussion instruments and what are their roles in an ensemble?
3. Which keyboards are considered percussion instruments? Why?

**Musical Examples**

Orlando Rios	<i>Yesa</i> (GBB)*
CASYM	<i>My Time</i> (GBB)*
Igor Stravinsky	<i>Rite of Spring</i>
Los Pleneros	“Campo” (GBB)*
Frisner Augustin	“Kongo”(GBB)*
Louis Prima	“Sing, Sing, Sing”(Gene Krupa)
Charlie Parker	“Joy Spring” (Clifford Brown/Max Roach)
John Coltrane	“Afro Blue” (Jazz at Lincoln Center)
Babatunde Olatunji	<i>Drums of Passion</i>
Steve Reich	<i>Drumming</i>
Edgar Varese	“Ionisation”
Various Artists	<i>Batucada: sound of the Favela</i>

\*Found on CD *New York: Global Beat of the Boroughs*

**Suggested Outcomes**

*Students will:*

- mime the actions of the teacher by returning the rhythms heard.
- discuss the meaning of pitch vs. non-pitched.
- recognize and describe the sound of specific percussion instruments from an orchestral recording (e.g., *Young Person’s Guide to the Instruments*).
- listen to samba school percussion groups and be able to name several of the instruments and discuss their function.
- list and describe the percussion instruments found in music around the world.
- construct a simple drum by using a cylinder and piece of rubber to stretch across the top.

**Learning Opportunities That Enhance Literacy**

- Students will attend a concert and discuss the percussion performances.
- Find a recording of a percussion ensemble and ask students to write a description of it and their reaction to it.

Unit 4 – From Gourds to Synthesizers and Everything In Between: Instrumental Music *continued*

**Topic E: The Keyboard Instruments**

**Suggested Instructional Idea**

Keyboard instruments have existed in basic form since Roman times. The evolution of the physical instrument includes the clavichord, the harpsichord, the organ, the piano and recently, electronic keyboards, including the synthesizer. The vast repertoire of solo compositions written for the piano has played a significant role in the evolution of modern music. The keyboard has also been an important part of ensemble playing and accompaniment throughout music history.

**Suggested Aims**

1. How is sound produced by the following instruments?
  - a. harpsichord
  - b. piano
  - c. organ
  - d. electronic keyboard
2. What is the history of the piano?
3. What are some important compositional forms found in the repertoire for piano/harpsichord?
  - a. fugue
  - b. sonata
  - c. theme and variations
  - d. concerto
  - e. suite
4. What are some important jazz styles in which the piano is prominent?
  - a. ragtime
  - b. boogie woogie
  - c. bebop
  - d. modal
  - e. free
5. How are keyboards used in various popular ensembles?

**Musical Examples**

Franz Liszt	<i>Concerto No. 1</i>
J.S. Bach	<i>Tocatta &amp; Fugue</i>
Ludwig van Beethoven	<i>Concerto #5 in E-Flat</i>
Frederic Chopin	<i>Ballade in G minor</i> <i>Mazurka in D</i>
Claude Debussy	<i>La Plus Que Lente</i>
Williams & Graham	“I Ain’t Got Nobody” (Fats Waller)
Meade Lux Lewis	“Honky Tonk Train Blues”
Bud Powell	“Celia”
John Coltrane	“Alabama” (McCoy Tyner)
Jerry Lee Lewis	“Great Balls of Fire”
Elton John & Bernie Taupin	“Your Song”
Billy Joel	“Piano Man”
Eddie Palmieri	“Azucar”

Unit 4 – From Gourds to Synthesizers and Everything In Between: Instrumental Music *continued*

**Topic E: The Keyboard Instruments** *(cont.)*

**Suggested Outcomes**

*Students will:*

- describe the basic physical mechanics of the piano, harpsichord, organ and synthesizer.
- explain in simple musical terms a few styles of classical piano music (e.g., fugue, sonata, variation).
- compare and contrast two solo jazz piano pieces from different eras.
- analyze the use of piano/keyboards in different popular music settings.

**Learning Opportunities That Enhance Literacy**

- Have the class create a wall chart presenting the history of piano repertoire by time period, composer and style.
- Play two stylistically varied solo jazz piano recordings for the students and ask them to write short papers comparing and contrasting the performances. Include how melody, harmony and rhythm are handled by the performers.
- Have students draw a diagram of one octave of piano keys and fill in the letter names of all 12 notes.

**Reading Guide for Teachers**

<i>The Jazz Piano Book</i>	Mark Levine
<i>Tons of Runs for the Contemporary Pianist</i>	Andy Laverne
<i>Piano – A Photographic History</i>	Miller Freeman Books
<i>Piano Notes: The World of the Pianist</i>	Charles Rosen
<i>From Paris to Peoria</i>	R. Allen Scott
<i>The Hammond Organ: Beauty in the B</i>	Mark Vail
<i>Analog Days: The Invention and Impact of the Moog Synthesizer</i>	Frank Trucco



Unit 4 – From Gourds to Synthesizers and Everything In Between: Instrumental Music *continued*

**Topic F: Music for Solo Instruments**

**Suggested Instructional Idea**

Nothing compels the focus of listening skills more than the solo instrument. Music played by a solo instrument can be calm and lyrical as well as bright and moving. By exploring the varied repertoire of material for the solo instrument, the listener can appreciate the technical strength and musical knowledge needed to be a soloist.

**Suggested Aims**

1. Which instruments are most frequently heard as soloists?
2. Why are instruments like the piano and guitar so often played without accompaniment?
3. Are instruments played differently when they are played without accompaniment?
4. Does the accompaniment affect the overall performance?
5. What is the role of form in music for solo instruments?
6. How does the soloist communicate with the audience?

**Musical Examples**

Ludwig van Beethoven	<i>Violin Concerto in D</i>
Johannes Brahms	<i>Clarinet Sonata No. 2 in E-Flat Op. 120/2 (1894)</i>
Bruce Hampton	<i>Excursions</i>
Luciano Berio	<i>Sequenza X</i>
W.A. Mozart	<i>Piano Concerto No. 9 K271</i>
Vincenzo Bellini	<i>Oboe Concerto</i>
Carl Maria von Weber	<i>Clarinet Concerto No.2</i>
Franz Strauss	<i>Horn Concerto</i>
J. S. Bach	<i>Cello Suites</i>
George Gershwin	<i>Rhapsody in Blue</i>

**Suggested Outcomes**

*Students will:*

- recognize the role of solo instruments in world societies.
- critically analyze varied solo performances.
- analyze and discuss differences between orchestral and piano accompaniment for solo performances.

**Learning Opportunities That Enhance Literacy**

- Select a solo performer and describe in writing what gives this artist a unique sound.
- Explain why vocal soloists say their instruments are their voices.

**Reading Guide for Teachers**

<i>Skain's Domain ... a Biography</i>	Wynton Marsalis
<i>My Own Story</i>	Luciano Pavarotti
<i>Leonard Bernstein: the Education of an American Musician</i>	Humphrey Burton

Unit 4 – From Gourds to Synthesizers and Everything In Between: Instrumental Music *continued*

**Topic G: Music for Small Ensemble**

**Suggested Instructional Idea**

A small ensemble can be defined as a group within a larger organization or a small group on its own playing music composed specifically for its size and the nature of its sound.

**Suggested Aims**

1. What are the characteristics of a small ensemble?
  - a. classical (duo – octet)
  - b. jazz (duo – octet)
  - c. rock (duo – octet)
2. What instruments are usually found in small ensembles?
  - a. classical
  - b. jazz
  - c. rock
  - d. pop
  - e. Latin
  - f. world

**Musical Examples**

**Woodwind Quintet**

Ludwig van Beethoven	<i>Woodwind Quintet Op.71</i>
Malcolm Arnold	<i>Three Shanties</i>
Jacques Ibert	<i>Trois Pièces Brèves</i>

**Brass Quintet**

W.A. Mozart	“Non Piu Andrai” <i>The Marriage of Figaro (Canadian Brass)</i>
George Gershwin	<i>Rhapsody In Blue</i> Selections from <i>Porgy and Bess</i> <i>(Atlantic Brass Quintet)</i>

**The String Quartet**

*Quartets of Beethoven, Brahms, Schubert, Bartok*

**Jazz and Rock Ensembles**

Lester Young	“Lester Leaps In” <i>(Count Basie’s Kansas City 7)</i>
Horace Silver	“Moon Rays” <i>(The Horace Silver Quartet)</i>
Traditional	“Cocek Manhattan” <i>(Yunakov Ensemble)(GBB)*</i>
George Harrison	“While My Guitar Gently Weeps” <i>(Beatles)</i>

\*Found on CD *New York City: Global Beat of the Boroughs*

**Suggested Outcomes**

*Students will:*

- describe the differences among small ensembles of differing styles.
- listen to various recordings and determine if the music has been created by small or large ensembles.
- describe the roles played by each member of a small ensemble in several styles of music.
- pick a piece of music played by a small ensemble and recognize how the role of each member changes throughout the piece.

**Learning Opportunities That Enhance Literacy**

- Break the class into small groups and have each group select a style of music and create a catalog of at least 15 small ensemble recordings in their category. The catalog should include the name of the composition, the composer, the artists (ensemble) and the instruments played on the recording.
- Have each student select one small ensemble recording, play the recording for the class and report on the changing role of one of the instruments throughout the recording.

Unit 4 – From Gourds to Synthesizers and Everything In Between: Instrumental Music *continued*

**Topic H: Music for Large Ensemble**

**Suggested Instructional Idea**

Large ensembles are, by definition, groups containing a large number of instruments. The style of music will determine the instrumentation, but in a large ensemble there is usually a variety of sound qualities available from the different instruments.

**Suggested Aims**

1. What are the characteristics of a large ensemble?
2. What is the difference between a symphony orchestra and a concert band?
3. What instruments play in each type of large ensemble?
  - a. orchestra
  - b. concert band
  - c. marching band
  - d. jazz big band
  - e. salsa orchestra
  - f. gamelan orchestra
  - g. other world music ensembles.
4. How has electronics changed the nature of large ensembles?

**Musical Examples**

Modest Moussorgsky	<i>Pictures at an Exhibition</i>
Camille Saint-Saens	<i>Carnival of the Animals</i>
Hector Berlioz	<i>Symphonie Fantastique</i>
Takemitsu	“From Me Flows What You Call Time”
Ludwig van Beethoven	<i>Symphony No. 9</i>
Johannes Brahms	<i>Violin Concerto in G</i>
Manny Oquendo	“Oquendo y Libre” (GBB)**
George Gershwin	“Summertime” <i>(Miles Davis w/Gil Evans Orchestra)</i>
Duke Ellington	“Cottontail”
John Philip Sousa	“Stars and Stripes Forever”

\*Found on CD *New York City: Global Beat of the Boroughs*.

**Suggested Outcomes**

*Students will:*

- explain the use of instrumentation to convey musical ideas after listening to recordings of large ensembles.
- analyze the interplay of instruments within a large ensemble.
- recognize the use of nontraditional instruments in a classical orchestra by listening to the movie music of Takemitsu or Tan Dun.

**Learning Opportunities That Enhance Literacy**

- Have students chart the history of the modern symphonic orchestra.
- Ask students to listen to a recording of a large ensemble and then respond, in writing, to the following questions.
  1. How did you know this was a large ensemble? (Please explain.)
  2. Which families of instruments are represented? (Describe each family.)
  3. Select one of the families and write a description of the function of that family in this particular piece of music.

**Reading Guide for Teachers**

<i>Immortal Bohemian</i> <i>(memoir of Giacomo Puccini)</i>	Dante del Fiorentino
<i>Music in Western Civilization</i>	Paul Henry Lang
<i>The Enjoyment of Music</i> <i>(chapters on orchestral music)</i>	Joseph Machlis

Unit 4 – From Gourds to Synthesizers and Everything In Between: Instrumental Music *continued*

**Tips from the Pros: Program Music**  
**“The Moldau” by Smetana**

This lesson has a double motivation. At the beginning, ask the students if they have ever taken a boat ride. Mention a river they might be familiar with, such as the Hudson River. Ask how far they went. If they went all the way to the beginning of the river, where would they have to go? The idea is to solicit the answer that a river starts from a stream, and another stream, and perhaps others – little trickles from a mountain, eventually merging to form a river. Using a piece of chalk, draw a curvy line on the board representing one such stream. Draw a second one, which merges with the first. Then turn the chalk on its side and draw a wider swath, representing the river. The river is question happens to be called “The Moldau” (or “Vlata” in Czech). Ask the students the difference between a stream and a river. Some answers to solicit might be:

<b>Stream</b>	<b>River</b>
smaller	larger
shallower	deeper
trickly	smooth flowing

Some musical equivalencies are:

<b>Stream</b>	<b>River</b>
softer	louder
higher	lower
staccato	legato

This part of the music takes about a minute. To motivate the rest of the piece, write the following on the board or on a photocopied sheet that each student has:

- A. The river flows through a village where people are dancing.
- B. The river passes through a forest where hunters’ horns are heard.
- C. It passes an ancient fortress, the High Castle.
- D. Night comes, the river flows peacefully on.
- E. The river flows over wild rapids.

Write the following numbers on the board or on the distributed sheets:

- 1.
- 2.
- 3.
- 4.
- 5.

Ask the students to arrange the order of these five items based on the music as they hear it.

Unit 4 – From Gourds to Synthesizers and Everything In Between: Instrumental Music *continued*

**Topic I: Television and Movie Theme Music**

**Suggested Instructional Idea**

If music was removed from television shows, movies and radio dramas, the effect of these media would be completely different. As magical as music makes motion pictures and television shows seem, it actually serves two practical functions. The first is to provide a theme or theme song that operates as an identification card that names and describes the show or movie. In many cases the identification becomes so strong that people can't hear the music without thinking of the movie or show or think of the show without humming the music. The second function of music is to act as a dramatic tool that enhances the emotional arc of the show or film by defining a character, situation or mood. Once we have heard the "shark" theme in *Jaws*, we don't need to see the shark to know it is coming. The only question is when.

**Suggested Aims**

1. What were some of the early radio dramas and how did they utilize music?
2. What are the similarities and differences between music for radio dramas and music for early television?
3. How does a TV or movie theme help define the general tenor of the show and/or identify it?
4. What are some of the functions of "background music"?
  - a. character identification
  - b. creating the feelings of tension and release, joy, anticipation, fear, and humor
  - c. enhancing or commenting on a visual event
5. What techniques can an orchestrator use to make a single melody theme convey different emotions and situations during the course of a film?

**Musical Examples**

**TV Themes**

<i>Twilight Zone</i>	Bernard Herrmann
<i>M.A.S.H.</i> ("Suicide is Painless")	Johnny Mandel
<i>Star Trek</i>	Alexander Courage
<i>Bonanza</i>	Ray Evans, Jay Livingston
<i>Hawaii Five-O</i>	Morton Stevens
<i>The Addams Family</i>	Vic Mizzy
<i>Mission Impossible</i>	Lalo Schifrin
<i>Green Acres</i>	Vic Mizzy
<i>Hill Street Blues</i>	Mike Post
<i>Law and Order</i>	Mike Post
<i>Three's Company</i>	Don Nichol, Joe Raposo
<i>The Jeffersons</i> ("Movin On Up")	Jeff Barry, Janette Dubois
<i>Happy Days</i>	Norman Gimbal, Charles Fox
<i>Cheers</i> ("Everybody Knows Your Name")	Gary Portoy, Judy Hart Angelo
<i>Friends</i>	Michael Skloff, Allee Willisk
<i>Peter Gunn</i> ("Melody of Love")	Henry Mancini
<i>The Flintstones</i>	William Hanna, Hoyt Curtin, Joseph Barbera
<i>Simpsons</i>	Danny Elfman



Unit 4 – From Gourds to Synthesizers and Everything In Between: Instrumental Music *continued*

**Soundtracks**

<i>Gone With the Wind</i>	Max Steiner
<i>Jaws</i>	John Williams
<i>Chariots of Fire</i>	Vangelis
<i>Star Wars</i>	John Williams
<i>Titanic</i>	James Horner
<i>The Thomas Crown Affair</i>	Michel Legrand
<i>Lord of the Rings</i>	Howard Shore
<i>The Graduate</i>	Paul Simon
<i>The Good, the Bad, the Ugly</i>	Ennio Morricone
<i>ET</i>	John Williams
<i>The Godfather</i>	Nino Rota, Carmine Coppola
<i>The Magnificent Seven</i>	Elmer Bernstein
<i>Rocky</i>	Bill Conti, Carol Connors, Ryn Robbins
<i>Casablanca</i>	Max Steiner
<i>High Noon</i>	Dimitri Tiomkin
<i>The Bridge on the River Kwai</i>	Malcolm Arnold
<i>Elmer Gantry</i>	Andre Previn
<i>Breakfast at Tiffany's</i>	Henry Mancini
<i>Lawrence of Arabia</i>	Maurice Jarré
<i>Dr. Zhivago</i>	Maurice Jarré
<i>Born Free</i>	John Barry
<i>Butch Cassidy &amp; the Sundance Kid</i>	Burt Bacharach

<i>Summer of '42</i>	Michel Legrand
<i>Limelight</i>	Charlie Chaplin, Raymond Reach, Larry Russell
<i>The Way We Were</i>	Marvin Hamlisch
<i>Close Encounters of the Third Kind</i>	John Williams
<i>Psycho</i>	Bernard Hermann
<i>The Last Emperor</i>	Ryuichi Sukamoto, David Byrne, Cong Su
<i>Kundun</i>	Philip Glass
<i>Crouching Tiger, Hidden Dragon</i>	Tan Dun
<i>The Pink Panther</i>	Henry Mancini
<i>Monsters Inc.</i>	Randy Newman

**Movie Theme Songs**

"High Noon"	Dimitri Tiomkin, Ned Washington
"The Third Man"	Anton Karas
"A Certain Smile"	Sammy Fain, Paul Francis Webster
"My Heart Will Go On"	<i>Titanic</i> James Horner, Will Jennings
"Alfie"	Burt Bacharach, Hal David
"Three Coins in the Fountain"	Jules Styne, Sammy Cahn
"The Streets of Philadelphia"	Bruce Springsteen
"The Windmills of Your Mind"	<i>The Thomas Crown Affair</i> Michel LeGrand, Alan & Marilyn Bergman
"Love is a Many Splendored Thing"	Sammy Fain, Paul Francis Webster
"Rock Around the Clock"	<i>Blackboard Jungle</i> James E. Myers, Max Freedman
"Morning After"	<i>Poseidon Adventure</i> Al Kashe, Joel Hirschorn
"Ghostbusters"	Ray Parker, Jr.
"Unchained Melody"	Alex North, Hy Zaret
"Moon River"	<i>Breakfast at Tiffany's</i> Henry Mancini, Johnny Mathis
"The Look of Love"	<i>Casino Royal</i> Burt Bacharach, Hal David
"Nobody Does it Better"	<i>The Spy Who Loved Me</i> Marvin Hamlisch, Carol Bayer Sager
"Up Where We Belong"	<i>An Officer and a Gentleman</i> Jade Nitzche, Buffy Sainte-Marie
"I Just Called to Say I Love You"	<i>The Woman in Red</i> Will Jennings, Stevie Wonder

Unit 4 – From Gourds to Synthesizers and Everything In Between: Instrumental Music *continued*

**Suggested Outcomes**

*Students will:*

- identify various movies and TV shows by listening to their music.
- select a film and describe how the music is used to reflect the emotional and situational changes in the film.
- listen to the score of a movie or TV show and explain what they think might be happening and why. (If you have time, have students check to see if they were correct.)

**Learning Opportunities That Enhance Literacy**

- Have students watch a cartoon with the sound off and then write an essay describing what they think is happening and what music they would add (can be any kind of music) to enhance the action.
- Have students find a short story and score it with any music or sound effect, live or recorded. Ask them to describe why they made their choices.
- Ask students to create a chart showing the major composers of movie soundtracks from 1940 to the present.

**Reading Guide for Teachers**

<i>Hollywood Rhapsody</i>	Gary Marmorstein
<i>Movie Music, the Film Reader</i>	Kay Dickerson
<i>Complete Guide to Film Scoring</i>	Richard Davis
<i>The Art of Film Music</i>	George Burt
<i>Knowing the Score</i>	David Morgan
<i>Classic TV: 50 Great Shows, 50 Theme Songs</i>	David Fantle
<i>TV's Biggest Hits</i>	John Burlingame

## Unit 5 – From Jazz Licks to Gigabytes: Popular Music in America 1900-Today

This unit is meant to give you a road map that you, and your students, can use to explore the rich and varied strands of music that comprised a century of popular music. The categories are a bit arbitrary, but we decided to divide the century into decades and then focus on one or two main topics. By its nature, this technique forced us to leave out many styles of music in any particular time period, and we were not able to follow the growth of each musical style through the entire century. For example, Topic A discusses the emergence of jazz and then we leave jazz and pick up its thread again in the 1940s. This has caused us to omit many of the transitional styles of jazz leading to bebop. This is true of many other types of music as well, but our space was limited and we were only able to deal with highlights. If you, as a teacher, wish to follow the complete growth of jazz, or other particular musical form, throughout the entire century, please do so.

What this unit does is to give strategies to study a variety of the significant and popular styles of the various time periods and how these art forms learned and borrowed from each other. It emphasizes how the different styles emerged, developed, influenced each other and were influenced themselves by other forms of music. The unit stresses the interweaving of these styles, how they combined and how they remained independent. It attempts to leave you with the vast scope of musical choices that now comprise today's American musical scene.

### Rationale

One of the major influences on twentieth century music in America has been social upheaval in the United States and around the world. The causes include economic depressions, world wars and civil rights issues. These social upheavals have caused migrations and immigrations that have brought diverse people and unique cultures into contact with one another. A second important influence has been the explosion of communications technologies from the wind-up phonograph to the disc-man, and beyond. This has made the music of every culture available all over the world.

The result of these two influences has been that musical styles are no longer developed in isolation and completely new musical hybrid styles have emerged. However, even as traditional styles have undergone subtle transformations they still continue to exist in their original forms as well. They are still performed, written, and recorded along with their hybrid offspring. We don't lose older forms, we just gain new ones. Because of this the number of musical styles constantly increases.

### Instructional Objectives

*Students will:*

- gain an appreciation of the evolution and roots of the music of each era.
- analyze various songs to determine musical similarities and differences (e.g., blues to funk; folk to rock).
- study the effect of ethnic and economic migrations on American music.
- trace the evolution of jazz from popular to art music.
- analyze the effect of each new technology on the music of its day.
- document the evolution of musical styles as they flow from one to another.
- map the emergence of Latino music in America with particular focus on salsa and New York City.
- describe the impact of American popular music on music all over the world and vice versa.
- learn to analyze song lyrics with regard to the social issues and cultural implications of each chosen time period.

### Topics and Concepts to be Explored

- What were some of the musical landmarks of each era of the twentieth century?
- Who were the great composers of each decade?
- How has musical performance changed through the years?
- What are the important songs or works of each decade and how are they the same or different?
- How has music been used in collaborative art forms, i.e., theater, movies, opera, TV?
- How have technological advances accelerated the rate at which one style of music influences another? What are the implications?
- How have the issues and concerns of a society historically been reflected in its popular music?
- How has the advent of electronic instruments changed the way music is written and performed?
- What role does the computer play in music today?
- How do the musical styles of the twentieth century relate to each other?
- Why is the music of one's youth so important to the person?

Unit 5 – From Jazz Licks to Gigabytes: Popular Music in America 1900-Today *continued*

Unit 5 Vocabulary

12-bar blues	Heavy metal	Recording industry
Bebop	Hook	Reggae
Big band	Improvisation	Rhythm & Blues
Break dancing	Internet	Rock 'n' Roll
Calypso	Jazz	Salsa
Chorus	Latin music	Samba
Computer-based music	Lyrics	Show tunes
Country music	Merengue	Soca
Digital revolution	Minstrel shows	Swing band
DJ	Mp3	Synthesizers
Electric guitar	Music hall	Tin Pan Alley
Electronic instruments	Musical revues	
Folk music	Operetta	
Groove	Ragtime	
	Rap	

Topic A: 1900-1930: The Emergence of Jazz

Suggested Instructional Idea

The emergence of the new music, jazz, at the turn of the century was nothing less than a revolution both musically and socially. Musically, the combining of musical styles and improvisational technique created a new art form. Socially, the music of African-Americans became, for the first time, part of the national fabric.

Suggested Aims

1. How did the African-American social and cultural reality of the early twentieth century lead to the creation of jazz?
2. How did the blues and ragtime shape early jazz?
3. What are the significant musical differences between jazz and its predecessors?
4. How was syncopation used to change the feeling of music?
5. What is improvisation and what style of improvisation was implemented in early jazz music?

Musical Examples

Scott Joplin	“Maple Leaf Rag”
W.C. Handy	“St. Louis Blues” (Bessie Smith)(Jazz at Lincoln Center)
Jelly Roll Morton	“Black Bottom Stomp” (Jazz at Lincoln Center)
James P. Johnson	“Carolina Shout”
Joe “King” Oliver	“West End Blues” (Louis Armstrong)
Fats Waller & Andy Razaf	“Honeysuckle Rose”
Robert Johnson	“Traveling Riverside Blues”
Blind Lemon Jefferson	“Matchbox Blues”

Suggested Outcomes

Students will:

- examine and analyze early blues, ragtime and jazz music.
- describe how improvisation is used in the music of this era.
- define the form of the 12-bar blues and some forms used in early jazz music.
- improvise short musical phrases using the language of early jazz.
- listen to the music of Louis Armstrong, Bessie Smith, and Jelly Roll Morton, and discuss the role of these artists in jazz history.
- explain the importance of the city of New Orleans and the northern migrations on the evolution of jazz.
- study the African-American experience of this era in order to document the beginnings of jazz as a distinctly African-American art form.

Unit 5 – From Jazz Licks to Gigabytes: Popular Music in America 1900-Today *continued*

**Suggested Student Activities that Enhance Literacy**

- Have the students write a report about the great individual musicians of this era who changed music history.
- Have students prepare a written chronology of the music of this era in chart form.
- Ask students to write a song in standard 12-bar blues form.
- Have the class trace the roots of early American jazz.

**Reading Guide for Teachers**

**The Blues:**

<i>Stompin' the Blues</i>	Albert Murray
<i>The Big Book of the Blues: A Biographical Encyclopedia</i>	Robert Santelli
<i>Deep Blues</i>	Robert Palmer
<i>Chicago Blues: The City &amp; the Music</i>	Mike Rom
<i>The Country Blues</i>	Samuel Charters
<i>The Blues Makers</i>	Samuel Charters
<i>The Story of the Blues</i>	Paul Oliver
<i>The Memphis Blues Again</i>	Ernest Withers

**Jazz:**

<i>The Jazz Theory Book</i>	Mark Levine
<i>Jazz Styles</i>	Mark C Gridley
<i>Cubano Be, Cubano Bop: One Hundred Years of Jazz in Cuba</i>	Leonard Acosta
<i>A Love Supreme: The Story of John Coltrane's Signature Album</i>	Ashley Kahn, Elvin Jones
<i>Visions of Jazz</i>	Gary Giddens
<i>The Oxford Companion to Jazz</i>	Bill Kirchner
<i>The Encyclopedia of Jazz</i>	Leonard Feather
<i>Jazz For Dummies</i>	Dirk Sutro, Berney Kessel
<i>Jazz: The First 100 Years</i>	Henry Martin , Keith Waters, Gale Group



Unit 5 – From Jazz Licks to Gigabytes: Popular Music in America 1900-Today *continued*

**Topic B: 1920 Through the 1950s: The Broadway Musical**

**Suggested Instructional Idea**

The Broadway musical emerged as a legitimate art form that tells an intelligent and creative story through words, music and dance.

**Suggested Aims**

- What kinds of theater and music influenced the early musical?
  - a. operetta
  - b. vaudeville
  - c. music hall
  - d. minstrel shows
  - e. musical revues
- Who were the great composers, lyricists, and book writers of this era?
- What were some of the seminal works of this period?
- What role did immigrants and immigration play in the evolution of the Broadway musical?
- What are the elements of a musical? (music, dance, costumes, lights, book, lyrics)
- What are some of the ways these elements can individually contribute to telling the story of a piece?
- How does the music help to define character in a musical play?
- How can one musical idea or motif become the basic information for a song, for a dance number, or for the underscoring of a scene?
- What were the topics of some of the great musicals of the 20s, 30s, 40s and 50s? Why were they relevant to the audience of the day?
- What is the role of the chorus in musical theater?

**Musical Examples**

**1920s**

Vincent Youmans & Irving Caesar	<i>No, No Nanette</i>
Jerome Kern	<i>Sally Sunny</i>
Rudolph Friml	<i>Rosemarie</i>
Richard Rodgers & Lorenz Hart	<i>The Garrick Gaieties</i> <i>A Connecticut Yankee</i>

**1930s**

George & Ira Gershwin	<i>Of Thee I Sing</i> <i>Girl Crazy</i> <i>Porgy and Bess</i>
Richard Rodgers & Lorenz Hart	<i>Babes in Arms</i> <i>Boys from Syracuse</i> <i>On Your Toes</i>
Jerome Kern & Oscar Hammerstein	<i>Music in the Air</i> <i>Showboat</i>
Irving Berlin	<i>As Thousands Cheer</i>
Harold Rome	<i>Pins and Needles</i>
Cole Porter	<i>Anything Goes</i> <i>Red Hot and Blue</i>

**1940s**

Cole Porter	<i>Kiss Me, Kate</i>
Vernon Duke & John LaTouche	<i>Cabin in the Sky</i>
Kurt Weill & Ira Gershwin	<i>Lady in the Dark</i>
Kurt Weill & Maxwell Anderson	<i>Lost in the Stars</i>
Richard Rodgers & Lorenz Hart	<i>Pal Joey</i>
Richard Rodgers & Oscar Hammerstein	<i>Carousel</i> <i>Oklahoma!</i> <i>South Pacific</i>
Leonard Bernstein, Betty Comden, Adolph Green	<i>On the Town</i> <i>Wonderful Town</i>
Irving Berlin	<i>Annie Get Your Gun</i>
Y.A. Harburg & Burton Lane	<i>Finian's Rainbow</i>
Alan Jay Lerner & Frederick Loewe	<i>Brigadoon</i>
Jules Styne & Leo Robin	<i>Gentlemen Prefer Blondes</i>

**1950s**

Richard Rodgers & Oscar Hammerstein	<i>The King and I</i> <i>The Sound of Music</i>
Irving Berlin	<i>Call Me Madam</i>
Cole Porter	<i>Silk Stockings</i>
Frank Loesser	<i>Guys and Dolls</i>
Meredith Willson	<i>The Music Man</i>
Stephen Sondheim & Jules Styne	<i>Gypsy</i>
Leonard Bernstein & Stephen Sondheim	<i>West Side Story</i>

Unit 5 – From Jazz Licks to Gigabytes: Popular Music in America 1900-Today *continued*

**Suggested Outcomes**

*Students will:*

- demonstrate an understanding of the history of musical theater.
- explore and analyze the elements of a Broadway musical.
- analyze selected musicals. This study should include the songs, dance music, underscoring and overtures of the chosen works.
- articulate the differences between opera and the American musical.
- discuss the social issues of the day and their impact on musical theater.
- explain the impact of the Broadway musical on popular music from the 1920s through the 1950s.
- recognize the similarity between the characters in a musical or drama and the people in their own lives.

**Learning Opportunities That Enhance Literacy**

- Ask students to write a report comparing a musical of the 1920s with a musical of the 1940s.
- Have students perform scenes from musical plays. Then have them explain why this scene is important to the play.
- Show a video of a musical (*Oklahoma!*, *Annie Get Your Gun*, *Porgy and Bess*, *Brigadoon*, *Showboat*, *The King and I*) and have students write a review of it.
- Have students choose and research five of the most influential musical plays since 1960 and write a short essay explaining what political, economic, or social events influenced the creation of their choices.
- Have students select a song from a musical and explain how the song either develops a particular character or furthers the story line of the musical.
- Break the class into groups and have each group develop and write an outline for a new musical. They might even suggest where songs might be incorporated. Each group should present its ideas to the class for reactions.

**Reading Guide for Teachers**

<i>Broadway Musicals Show by Show</i>	Stanley Green
<i>Beautiful Mornin': The Broadway Musical in the 1940's</i>	Ethan Mordden
<i>The Complete Lyrics of Ira Gershwin</i>	Ira Gershwin
<i>Coming Up Roses: The Broadway Musical in the 1950's</i>	Ethan Mordden
<i>The New York Times Book of Broadway</i>	Ben Brantley
<i>150 Years of Popular Musical Theater</i>	Andrew Lamb

Unit 5 – From Jazz Licks to Gigabytes: Popular Music in America 1900-Today *continued*

**Topic C: 1940 to the 1960s: Emergence and Evolution**

**Suggested Instructional Idea**

After the Second World War different styles of popular music emerged simultaneously. Some evolved from older forms, some were brought here by the new wave of immigrants that came after the war and some developed as a fusion of older music meeting the new. A few of these changes include:

- the further evolution of jazz.
- the emergence of Latin music.
- the sudden explosion in popularity of rhythm and blues and rock and roll.

**Suggested Aims**

1. What were some of the big bands of the World War II era and what happened to them after the war? Why?
2. What was the impact of the Second World War impact on other popular music?
3. Why did popular music become artist-driven and who were some of the artists? (Frank Sinatra, Bing Crosby, Nat “King” Cole, Johnny Mathis, Rosemary Clooney, Doris Day)
4. What were some of the musical advances discovered and implemented by the pioneers of bebop, particularly Charlie Parker, Dizzy Gillespie and Thelonius Monk?
5. What were some of the great Latin dance rhythms of the 1940s and 1950s?
6. What was the impact of Latin music on jazz and popular music and vice versa?
7. How did the Latin fusion music we call *salsa* emerge and become an important New York art form? (Include the music of Tito Puente, Willie Colon, Eddie Palmieri and Celia Cruz.)
8. Who are some of the artists that contributed to the evolution of rhythm and blues from traditional blues? Include Robert Johnson, Blind Lemon Jefferson, Bessie Smith, Louis Jordan, John Lee Hooker, Muddy Waters, B. B. King, Ray Charles.

9. Who are some of the artists that developed rock and roll? Discuss Little Richard, Elvis Presley, Jerry Lee Lewis, Les Paul, Bobby Darin, Chuck Berry, Buddy Holly, Fats Domino, Bo Diddley, Ray Charles, and the Everly Brothers.
10. What were some of the basic harmonic forms and rhythms of rock and roll music?
11. How do the lyrics of early rock and R&B reflect the society of the time?
12. How did the electric guitar and amplification change the musical landscape? Discuss the innovations of Les Paul.
13. What were some of the other influential musical styles that became popular during these years? (Include calypso, folk music, country music and doo wop)

**Musical Examples**

Woody Guthrie	“This Land is Your Land”
Huddie (Lead Belly) Ledbetter	“Goodnight Irene”
Pete Seeger	“Where Have All the Flowers Gone?” “Wimoweh” ( <i>The Weavers</i> )
Traditonal	“Tom Dooley” ( <i>The Kingston Trio</i> )
Hank Williams	“Your Cheatin’ Heart”
Willie Nelson	“Blue Eyes Cryin’ in the Rain” “Crazy” ( <i>Patsy Cline</i> )
Roy Acuff	“Great Speckled Bird”
Lester Flatt & Earl Scruggs	“Foggy Mountain Breakdown”
Harry Belafonte	“Day-O”
Tito Puente	“Mambo King”
Glenn Miller	“In the Mood”
Count Basie	“One O’Clock Jump”
Charlie Parker	“Anthropology”
Miles Davis	<i>Kinda Blue</i>
Billie Holiday	“Strange Fruit”

B. B. King	“Lucille”
Chuck Berry	“Rock and Roll Music”
Buddy Holly	“That’ll Be the Day”
Jerome Kern	“Silver Lining” ( <i>Chet Baker</i> )
Perez Prado	“Patricia”
Dizzy Gillespie	“Salt Peanuts”
Bud Powell	“Celia”
Little Richard	“Tutti Frutti”
Bobby Darin	“Splish Splash”
Max E. Freeman & James Myers	“Rock Around the Clock” ( <i>Bill Haley &amp; the Comets</i> )
Elvis Presley, Mae Axton, Tommy Durden	“Heartbreak Hotel” ( <i>Elvis Presley</i> )
Jerry Lee Lewis	“Great Balls of Fire”
Vincent Rose	“Blueberry Hill” ( <i>Fats Domino</i> )
Hoagy Carmichael and Stuart Gorrell	“Georgia on My Mind” ( <i>Ray Charles</i> )
Bourdleaux & Felice Bryant	“Wake Up Little Susie” ( <i>Everly Brothers</i> )
Bo Diddley	“Bo Diddley”
George C. Cory, Jr. & Douglass Cross	“I Left My Heart in San Francisco” ( <i>Tony Bennett</i> )
Jay Livingston & Ray Evans	“Mona Lisa” ( <i>Nat “King” Cole</i> )

Unit 5 – From Jazz Licks to Gigabytes: Popular Music in America 1900-Today *continued*

**Suggested Outcomes**

*Students will:*

- describe the emergence of the pioneer bebop groups.
- explain the harmonic, rhythmic, and melodic evolution of jazz music during this time period (include music of Charlie Parker, Dizzy Gillespie and Miles Davis).
- be introduced to some of the great vocalists of the swing era, including Sarah Vaughn, Ella Fitzgerald, Billie Holiday, Dinah Washington, Etta James, Dinah Shore, Rosemary Clooney, Frank Sinatra, Mel Torme, Tony Bennett, Nat “King” Cole, Perry Como.
- trace the roots of salsa and document its emergence as an important musical art form.
- listen to examples and detect the similarities and differences between early R&B and rock and roll.
- examine the musical shift toward electric guitar-driven music.
- examine the influences of the new forms of pop music that emerged during the 1950s.
- show how the blues of earlier years influenced many of these musical styles.

**Learning Opportunities That Enhance Literacy**

- Have students listen to recordings of the music of Duke Ellington, Count Basie, Fletcher Henderson, Glenn Miller and the Dorsey Brothers. Then ask them to write an analysis of the role of the brass section, the woodwind section and the rhythm section on each recording.
- Play recordings of the songs from World War II, and discuss with the students the ways in which these songs reflected the mood of the country at that time.
- Ask students to chart the popular music of the post-World War II era, showing the earlier musical roots of each style of today’s music.
- Have students select one form of popular music of this era and write a report explaining how this music influenced the music of today.

**Reading Guide for Teachers**

**Country Music:**

<i>Grand Ole Opry - History of Country Music</i>	Paul Kingsbury
<i>Country Music, U.S.A.</i>	Bill C. Malone
<i>Heartaches by the Number: Country Music’s 500 Greatest Singles</i>	
	David Cartwell, Bill Friskics-Warren
<i>Finding Her Voice: Women in Country Music 1800-2000</i>	
	Mary Bufwack, Robert Oerman
<i>The Twisted Roots of Rock ‘n’ Roll</i>	Nick Tosches

**Folk Music:**

<i>Woody Guthrie: A Life</i>	Joe Klein
<i>Folk Song USA</i>	John Lomax, Alan Lomax
<i>Bluegrass: A History</i>	Neil Rosenberg
<i>When We Were Good: The Folk Revival</i>	Robert Cantrell
<i>Romancing the Folk: Public Memory and American Roots Music</i>	Benjamin Filen

**Latin Music:**

<i>Musical: Salsa, Rumba, Merengue and More</i>	Sue Steward
<i>The Brazilian Sound</i>	Chris McGowan
<i>The Latin Tinge</i>	John Storm Roberts
<i>The Mexican American Orquesta</i>	Manuel Peña
<i>Tejano Proud: Tex-Mex Music in the Twentieth Century</i>	
	Guadalupe San Miguel, Jr.
<i>Listening to Salsa</i>	Frances R. Apuricio
<i>Mambo Kingdom: Latin Music in New York</i>	Max Salazan
<i>Salsa!: Havan Heat, Bronx Beat</i>	Hernando Culco Ospina

**Pop Music:**

<i>American Popular Song: The Great Innovators 1900-1950</i>	
	Graham Lees, Alec Wilder, James T. Maher (eds.)
<i>The Poets of Tin Pan Alley: A History of America’s Great Lyricists</i>	
	Philip Faria
<i>Easy to Remember: The Great American Songwriters and Their Songs</i>	
	William Knowlton Zinsser
<i>Listening to Classic American Popular Songs</i>	Allen Forte et al.

Unit 5 – From Jazz Licks to Gigabytes: Popular Music in America 1900-Today *continued*

**Topic D: 1960 to the 1980s:  
What’s Goin’ On?**

**Suggested Instructional Idea**

The musical styles that developed during the 1940s to the 1960s continued to evolve and proliferate. Many of these styles began to split into branches of their own. Politics and societal change began to heavily influence the lyrics and sound of most forms of popular music.

**Suggested Aims**

1. How did the styles of folk music, rhythm and blues, rock and roll, and Latin evolve during these years?
2. What happened to the blues during this era?
3. How did traditional blues continue to influence evolving newer styles of music?
4. Why is the “verse, chorus and hook” so important as a popular song form?
5. How did the immediate access to politics and world events of the day that the new communications technologies provided shape popular music both lyrically and musically?
6. Why did the role of the record producer increase in power?
7. Why did Woodstock and other major musical concert events become so important both in reality and symbolically?

**Musical Examples**

Sonny Bono	“I Got You Babe” ( <i>Sonny &amp; Cher</i> )
Bob Gaudio	“Sherry” ( <i>Frankie Valli &amp; the Four Seasons</i> )
Donovan	“Hurdy Gurdy Man”
Joni Mitchell	“Both Sides Now” ( <i>Judy Collins</i> )
Stevie Wonder	<i>Songs in the Key of Life</i>
John Lennon & Paul McCartney	“I Want to Hold Your Hand” ( <i>Beatles</i> )

Holland-Dozier-Holland	“Where Did Our Lives Go?” ( <i>Supremes</i> )
Bob Dylan	“Blowin’ In the Wind”
Patti Smith	“Because the Night”
Mick Jagger & Keith Richards	“Satisfaction” ( <i>Rolling Stones</i> )
Pete Townsend	<i>Tommy</i> ( <i>The Who</i> )
John Phillips	“California Dreaming” ( <i>The Mamas and the Papas</i> )
Marvin Gaye	“What’s Goin’ On?”
Grace Slick	“White Rabbit” ( <i>Jefferson Airplane</i> )
Brian Wilson	“Surfin’ USA” ( <i>Beach Boys</i> )
Kris Kristofferson	“Me and Bobby McGee” ( <i>Janis Joplin</i> )
Bob Marley	“I Shot the Sheriff”
Stevie Nicks	“Rhiannon” ( <i>Fleetwood Mac</i> )
Otis Redding	“RESPECT” ( <i>Aretha Franklin</i> )
Neil Young	“Ohio” ( <i>Crosby, Stills, Nash and Young</i> )
Deborah Harry & Chris Stein	“Heart of Glass” ( <i>Blondie</i> )
Bob Dylan	“Mr. Tambourine Man” ( <i>The Byrds</i> )
Al Green	“Let’s Stay Together”
Donna Summer	<i>Endless Summer: Donna Summer’s Greatest Hits</i>
Gloria Gaynor	<i>Greatest Hits</i>
The Doors	“Light My Fire”
Elton John & Bernie Taupin	“Yellow Brick Road”
Barry Gibb	“I Started a Joke” ( <i>Bee Gees</i> )

Lou Reed	“Sweet Jean” ( <i>Velvet Underground</i> )
Robbie Robertson	“The Night They Drove Old Dixie Down” ( <i>The Band, Joan Baez</i> )
Buffy St. Marie	“Until It’s Time for You To Go”
Carole King	<i>Tapestry</i>
Jerry Garcia & Robert Hunter	“Uncle John’s Band” ( <i>Grateful Dead</i> )
The Eagles	“Hotel California”
Peter Greene	“Black Magic Woman” ( <i>Santana</i> )
Jimmy Page & Robert Plant	“Stairway to Heaven” ( <i>Led Zeppelin</i> )
Robert Lamm	“Saturday in the Park” ( <i>Chicago</i> )
Paul McCartney	“Band on the Run” ( <i>Wings</i> )
George Harrison	<i>Concert for Bangladesh</i>
Bob Dylan	“All Along the Watchtower” ( <i>Jimi Hendrix</i> )
The Buckingham	”Kind of a Drag”
The Corporation	“I Want You Back” ( <i>Jackson 5</i> )
William “Smokey” Robinson	“Tears of a Clown” ( <i>Smokey Robinson and the Miracles</i> )
Otis Redding	“I’ve Been Lovin’ You Too Long”
Johnny Cash	“Ring of Fire” “Folsom Prison”
James Brown	“Papa’s Got a Brand New Bag”
Harry Wayne Casey	“That’s the Way I Like It” ( <i>KC and the Sunshine Band</i> )
David Bowie	<i>The Rise and Fall of Ziggy Stardust</i>



Unit 5 – From Jazz Licks to Gigabytes: Popular Music in America 1900-Today *continued*

**Suggested Outcomes**

Students will

- listen to a sample of the musical examples and express the differences and similarities in the lyrics of songs from such diverse performers as Bob Marley, Al Green, the Beatles, and Bob Dylan.
- study the relationship between the societal and musical changes of this particular era.
- analyze a variety of music in order to understand what earlier forms it evolved from.
- discuss the new technologies and how they affected the music available to the public.
- describe the emergence of the producer as a major force determining the sound of a recording.

**Learning Opportunities That Enhance Literacy**

- Have students prepare a chart that traces the evolution of song forms from the 1940s to the 1980s.
- Have each student pick a record label and write a report on its contribution to the field of music.
- Ask the class to have a panel discussion on the events that took place within the country and around the world during this period of time and how they affected popular music.

**Reading Guide for Teachers**

*Dancing in the Street: Motown and the Cultural Politics of Detroit* Suzanne E. Smith

*Top R&B Albums 1965-1998* Joel Whitburn

*All Music Guide to Soul: The Definitive Guide to R & B & Soul* Vladimir Bogdanov

*Standing in the Shadows of Motown* Dr. Licks

*Sweet Soul Music: Rhythm and Blues and the Southern Dream of Freedom* Peter Guralnick

**Rock:**

*The Rolling Stone Encyclopedia of Rock 'n' Roll* Jon Pareles et al.

*Rolling Stone Illustrated History of Rock and Roll: The Definitive History of the Most Important Artists* Anthony Deourtis

*Feel Like Going Home: Portraits in Blues & Rock 'n' Roll* Peter Guralnick

*Good Rockin' Tonight: Sun Records and the Birth of Rock 'n' Roll* Colin Escott

*Rock Music Styles: A History* Katherine Charlton

**Funk:**

*Funk: The Music, the People, and the Rhythms of the One* Rickey Vincent

Unit 5 – From Jazz Licks to Gigabytes: Popular Music in America 1900-Today *continued*

**Topic E: 1980 to the present: It’s a (W)rap**

**Suggested Instructional Idea**

The affordability and availability of technology including computers, synthesizers, samplers and digital recording continues to change the shape of pop music. These technologies have permitted many new styles of music to evolve and emerge. The music video, for example, has made pop music a visual as well as aural medium.

This topic is divided into two sections. The first will focus on technology and the second on the evolving music of our time.

**Note:** The same Musical Examples and Reading Guide apply to both sections.

**Musical Examples**

Michael Jackson	<i>Thriller</i>
Prince	“1999”
Queen Latifah	<i>Order in the Court</i>
Mark Knopfler	“Money for Nothing” ( <i>Dire Straits</i> )
Billy Joel	“Still Rock and Roll to Me”
Paul Simon	<i>Graceland</i>
LL Cool J	<i>Mama Said Knock You Out</i>
U2	“Sunday Bloody Sunday”
George Michael	“Teacher”
Eminem	“Without Me”
Elton John & Tim Rice	“The Circle of Love”
Beastie Boys	“Fight for Your Right to Party”

Kurt Cobain	“Teen Spirit” ( <i>Nirvana</i> )
Elvis Costello	“Alison”
Shania Twain	“I Feel Like A Woman”
Dolly Parton	“Here You Come Again”
Garth Brooks	<i>Double Live</i>
TLC	“No Scrubs”
Peter Gabriel	“Sledge Hammer”
Bruce Springsteen	“Born to Run” ( <i>Bruce Springsteen and the E Street Band</i> )
Sting	“Message in a Bottle” ( <i>Police</i> )
Boy George	“Do You Really Want to Hurt Me?” ( <i>Culture Club</i> )
Dr. Dre	“The Chronic”
Snoop Dogg	“What’s My Name?”
Ice T	“What Really Goes On”
Stevie Ray Vaughn	“The Sky is Crying”
Stephen Tyler	“Janie Got a Gun” ( <i>Aerosmith</i> )
Peter Brown & Robert Rans	“Material Girl” ( <i>Madonna</i> )
Michael Stipe	“Losing My Religion” ( <i>R.E.M.</i> )
Marc Anthony	“I Need to Know”
Jennifer Lopez	<i>J. Lo</i>
Grandmaster Flash and the Furious Five	<i>Message from Beat Street</i>
Run DMC	<i>Raising Hell</i>
Diane Warren	“Because You Love Me”
Rufus (with Chaka Kahn)	<i>Nightclubbing</i>
Duran Duran	<i>Arena</i>

Ricky Martin	<i>Ricky Martin</i>
P. Diddy	<i>No Way Out</i>

**Reading Guide for Teachers**

**Rock:**

<i>Thirty Frames Per Second: The Visionary Art of the Music Video</i> Steven Reiss, Neil Feinenn Jeff Ayeroff and Michael Stipe
<i>Sound of the Beast: The Complete Headbanging History of Heavy Metal</i> Ian Christie
<i>Bubblegum Music is the Naked Truth</i> Kim Cooper
<i>The Mansion on the Hill: Dylan, Young, Geffen, Springsteen, and the Head-On Collision of Rock and Commerce</i> Fred Goodman

**Alternative Rock:**

<i>The Best Musicians and Recordings</i> Dave Thompson
---

**Indie Movement:**

<i>Our Band Could Be Your Life</i> Michael Azerad
--

Unit 5 – From Jazz Licks to Gigabytes: Popular Music in America 1900-Today *continued*

**Section 1: Technology**

**Suggested Aims**

1. How did technology and, in particular, the digital explosion affect popular music?
2. How has the internet changed music distribution?
3. How was rock specifically affected by MTV?
4. How did technology contribute to the rise of the DJ as an artist? (Is the turntable now considered an instrument?)
5. What is the history of digital keyboards and samplers?
6. How have computers changed the way music is produced?

**Suggested Outcomes**

*Students will:*

- determine how and if digital technology has changed the sound of music today.
- list the ways in which digital technology is used in the creation of music.
- describe the influence of the music video on the way music is produced.
- become familiar with the influence of the Internet on music distribution.

**Learning Opportunities That Enhance Literacy**

- Have students create a timeline containing each of the new musical technologies developed since 1980.
- Have students select one of the new technologies and research and write a report about how it changed some aspect of music.
- Divide the students into small groups. Have each group select a favorite song and write and perform a “video” of the song for the class. If possible, videotape the performance.

**Section 2: The Music**

**Suggested Aims**

1. What are the four facets of the hip-hop culture that evolved during this period?
  - a. rap
  - b. break dancing
  - c. Djing
  - d. graffiti art
2. How was rap, a distinctly urban music, able to cross over into the mainstream?
3. What kind of exposure enabled world music to become part of the American pop scene?
4. What was the significance of the blending of rock and rap?
5. How has country music, particularly from Nashville, blended into the popular music scene?
6. Why did Latin pop music explode in the 1990s?
7. How has remixing blended music and technology to create a new music of its own?

**Suggested Outcomes**

*Students will:*

- describe how rap has crossed over into mainstream culture.
- listen to and analyze R&B pre- and post-hip-hop.
- explain how the availability of music from all over the world has affected American popular music of all kinds.
- discuss the changes in rock music since 1980.
- describe how different genres of popular music borrow from each other.

**Learning Opportunities That Enhance Literacy**

- Have students debate whether a song can become popular without a video.
- Have students choose a contemporary tune and write an analysis of its musical structure, lyrical contents and its use of technology.
- Tell students to select a song and report on older musical forms that they feel influenced its lyrics and music.
- Have students analyze specific songs from a few different genres and discuss their similarities and differences.
- Have students choose an artist whose career began more than 20 years ago and who is still successful. Have them write reports on how the artist that they have chosen adapted or changed to remain popular.

## Prominent Musicians

### Prominent Conductors

Claudio Abbado  
 John Barbirolli  
 Daniel Barenboim  
 Thomas Beecham  
 Leonard Bernstein  
 Karl Bohm  
 Leon Botstein  
 Pierre Boulez  
 Ricardo Chailly  
 Colin Davis  
 Christof Von Dohnanji  
 Charles Dutoit  
 Christof Eschenbach  
 Wilhem Furtwangler  
 Valery Gergiev  
 Carlo Maria Giulini  
 Bernard Haitink  
 Herbert von Karajan  
 Rudolf Kemp  
 Carlos Kleiber  
 Otto Klemperer  
 Serge Koussevitsky  
 Erich Leinsdorf  
 James Levine  
 Loren Maazel  
 Charles Mackerras  
 Nicolai Malko  
 Neville Marriner  
 Kurt Masur  
 Zubin Mehta  
 Dmitri Mitropoulos  
 Pierre Monteux  
 Yevgeny Mravinsky  
 Ricardo Muti  
 Eugene Ormandy  
 Seiji Ozawa  
 Federici Petrides  
 Andre Previn  
 Simon Rattle

Hans Richter  
 Mstislav Rostropovich  
 Esa-Pekka Salonen  
 Jukka-Pekka Saraaste  
 Gerard Schwarz  
 Tullio Serafin  
 Leonard Slatkin  
 George Solti  
 Leopold Stokowski  
 George Szell  
 Michael Tilson Thomas  
 Arturo Toscanini  
 Bruno Walter  
 Franz Welser-Most  
 Benjamin Zander  
 Pinchas Zuckerman

### Prominent Sopranos

Kathleen Battle  
 Monserrat Caballe  
 Maria Callas  
 Victoria de los Angeles  
 Helen Donath  
 Emma Eames  
 Eileen Farrell  
 Kirsten Flagstad  
 Renee Fleming  
 Mirella Freni  
 Elisabeth Grummer  
 Gundula Janowitz  
 Dorothy Kirsten  
 Lotte Lehmann  
 Sylvia McNair  
 Nellie Melba  
 Anna Moffo  
 Birgit Nilsson  
 Jessye Norman  
 Roberta Peters  
 Lily Pons  
 Rosa Ponselle  
 Lucia Popp  
 Leontyne Price  
 Leonie Rysanek  
 Bidu Sayo  
 Elisabeth Schumann  
 Elisabeth Schwartzkopf  
 Renata Scotto  
 Beverly Sills  
 Eleanor Steber  
 Teresa Stratas  
 Joan Sutherland  
 Renata Tebaldi  
 Kiri Te Kanawa  
 Luisa Tetrazzini  
 Helen Traubel  
 Dawn Upshaw  
 Deborah Voigt

### Prominent Mezzo-Sopranos

Marian Anderson  
 Janet Baker  
 Agnes Baltsa  
 Fedora Barbieri  
 Cecilia Bartoli  
 Theresa Berganza  
 Stephanie Blythe  
 Olga Borodina  
 Rose Brampton  
 Grace Bumbry  
 Fiorenza Cossotto  
 Michelle De Young  
 Brigitte Fassbender  
 Susan Graham  
 Denyce Graves  
 Marilyn Horne  
 Vesselina Kasarova  
 Jennifer Larmore  
 Christa Ludwig von Otter  
 Ewa Podles  
 Florence Quivar  
 Giulietta Simionato  
 Anna Sofie  
 Risë Stevens  
 Tatiana Troyanos  
 Shirley Verrett  
 Frederica Von Stade  
 Dolora Zajick

### Prominent Tenors

Carlo Bergonzi  
 Jussi Bjoerling  
 Andrea Bocelli  
 Jose Carreras  
 Enrico Caruso  
 Franco Corelli  
 Richard Crooks  
 Mario Del Monaco  
 Giuseppe di Stefano  
 Juan Diego Florez  
 Placido Domingo  
 Nicolai Gedda  
 Benjamin Gigli  
 Ben Heppner  
 Jan Kiepura  
 Alfredo Kraus  
 Mario Lanza  
 Richard Margison  
 John McCormack  
 Lauritz Melchior  
 Frank Patterson  
 Luciano Pavarotti  
 Jan Peerce  
 Helgi Rosvaenge  
 Manfred Schmidt  
 Leo Slezak  
 Jess Thomas  
 Richard Tucker  
 Jon Vickers  
 Fritz Wunderlich

Prominent Musicians *continued***Prominent Baritones and Bassos**

Thomas Allen  
 Carlos Alvarez  
 Ettore Bastianini  
 Fyodor Chaliapin  
 Vladimir Chernov  
 Boris Christoff  
 Geraint Evans  
 Feruccio Furlanetto  
 Tito Gobbi  
 Nathan Gunn  
 Thomas Hampson  
 Jerome Hines  
 Dimitri Hvorostovsky  
 Marcel Journet  
 Simon Keenlyside  
 Pavel Lisitsian  
 Robert Lloyd  
 Robert Merrill  
 Alastair Miles  
 Sherrill Milnes  
 James Morris  
 Giulio Neri  
 Rene Pape  
 Tancredi Pasero  
 Ezio Pinza  
 Samuel Ramey  
 Paul Robeson  
 Matti Salminen  
 Cesare Siepi  
 Gerard Souzay  
 Bryn Terfel  
 Laurence Tibbett  
 Norman Treigle  
 Jose van Dam  
 Leonard Warren

**Prominent Female Pop/Rock/Jazz Singers**

Tori Amos  
 Julie Andrews  
 Joan Armatrading  
 Erykah Badu  
 Joan Baez  
 Pearl Bailey  
 Anita Baker  
 Shirley Bassey  
 Pat Benatar  
 Teresa Brewer  
 Ruth Brown  
 Betty Buckley  
 Kate Bush  
 Mariah Carey  
 Karen Carpenter  
 Mary Chapin-Carpenter  
 Tracy Chapman  
 Cher  
 Petula Clark  
 Patsy Cline  
 Rosemary Clooney  
 Natalie Cole  
 Judy Collins  
 Sheryl Crow  
 Doris Day  
 Ani DiFranco  
 Celine Dion  
 Cass Elliot  
 Gloria Estafan  
 Melissa Ethridge  
 Ella Fitzgerald  
 Roberta Flack  
 Connie Francis  
 Aretha Franklin  
 Jane Froman  
 Judy Garland  
 Deborah Gibson  
 Astrid Gilberto

Crystal Gayle  
 Eydie Gorme  
 Emmylou Harris  
 P. J. Harvey  
 Lauryn Hill  
 Faith Hill  
 Billie Holiday  
 Lena Horne  
 Whitney Houston  
 Chrissie Hynde  
 Mahalia Jackson  
 Janet Jackson  
 Etta James  
 Joan Jett  
 Jewel  
 Rickie Lee Jones  
 Janis Joplin  
 Wynonna Judd  
 Naomi Judd  
 Alicia Keyes  
 Chaka Khan  
 Carole King  
 Eartha Kitt  
 Gladys Knight  
 Diana Krall  
 Patti LaBelle  
 Cleo Laine  
 K. D. Lang  
 Queen Latifah  
 Cyndi Lauper  
 Peggy Lee  
 Brenda Lee  
 Annie Lennox  
 Loretta Lynn  
 Madonna  
 Barbara Mandrell  
 Mary Martin  
 Reba McEntyre  
 Sarah McLachlan  
 Carmen McRae

Christine McVie  
 Natalie Merchant  
 Ethel Merman  
 Bette Midler  
 Liza Minelli  
 Joni Mitchell  
 Alanis Morissette  
 Anne Murray  
 Olivia Newton-John  
 Stevie Nicks  
 Laura Nyro  
 Sinead O'Connor  
 Anita O'Day  
 K.T. Oslin  
 Patti Page  
 Dolly Parton  
 Liz Phair  
 Edith Piaf  
 Ma Rainey  
 Bonnie Raitt  
 Helen Reddy  
 Della Reese  
 Lee Ann Rimes  
 Linda Ronstadt  
 Diana Ross  
 Sade  
 Dinah Shore  
 Carly Simon  
 Nina Simone  
 Grace Slick  
 Bessie Smith  
 Patti Smith  
 Kate Smith  
 Dusty Springfield  
 Jo Stafford  
 Mavis Staples  
 Kay Starr  
 Gwen Stefani  
 Barbra Streisand  
 Donna Summer

Pam Tillis  
 Tanya Tucker  
 Tina Turner  
 Shania Twain  
 Sarah Vaughn  
 Dionne Warwick  
 Dinah Washington  
 Ethel Waters  
 Lucinda Williams  
 Vanessa Williams  
 Cassandra Wilson  
 Nancy Wilson  
 Tammy Wynette

**Prominent Male Pop/Rock/Jazz Singers**

Ed Ames  
 Paul Anka  
 Marc Anthony  
 Louis Armstrong  
 Charles Aznavour  
 Harry Belafonte  
 Tony Bennett  
 George Benson  
 Chuck Berry  
 Jon Bon Jovi  
 Bono  
 Pat Boone  
 David Bowie  
 James Bown  
 Garth Brooks  
 Jackson Browne  
 Cab Calloway  
 Johnny Cash  
 Nick Cave  
 Ray Charles  
 Chubby Checker  
 Maurice Chevalier  
 Harry Chapin  
 Kurt Cobain  
 Leonard Cohen  
 Nat“King” Cole  
 Phil Collins  
 Perry Como  
 Harry Connick, Jr.  
 Robert Cray  
 Bing Crosby  
 Roger Daltrey  
 Vic Damone  
 Bobby Darin  
 Sammy Davis, Jr.  
 John Denver  
 Neil Diamond  
 Fats Domino



Prominent Musicians *continued*

Bob Dylan	Ricky Martin	Steven Tyler	Michael Mason	Benny Goodman	Al Clink
Billy Eckstine	Tony Martin	Jerry Vale	Janice Miswell-Mithcell	Woody Herman	Ornette Coleman
Bryan Ferry	Johnny Mathis	Luther Vandross	Sam Most	Murray Khourj	Steve Coleman
Eddie Fisher	Dave Matthews	Cartano Veloso	Marcel Moyse	Thea King	John Coltrane
Tennessee Ernie Ford	Paul McCartney	Hank Williams	James Newton	David Krakaur	Sonny Criss
Peter Gabriel	Bobby McFerrin	Joe Williams	Donald Peck	Ted Lewis	Paquito D’Rivera
Art Garfunkel	Shane McGowan	Andy Williams	Jean-Pierre Rampal	Sabine Meyer	John Dankworth
Larry Gatlin	Tim McGraw	Stevie Wonder	Paula Robison	Paul Meyer	Jesse Davis
Marvin Gaye	Freddie Mercury	Glenn Yarborough	Katherine Saenger	Mark Miller	Paul Desmond
Boy George	Roger Miller	Neil Young	Lois Schaeffer	Alcide Nang	Lou Donaldson
Gilberto Gil	Van Morrison		Gary Schocker	Albert Nicholas	Jimmy Dorsey
Vince Gill	Youssou N’Dour	<b>Prominent Flutists</b>	Elaine Shaffer	Sean Osborn	Candy Dulfer
Bobby Goldsboro	Milton Nascimento	Marc Adler	Joshua Smith	Ivo Papasov	Marty Ehrlich
Robert Goulet	Willie Nelson	Sophia Anastasia	Lou Tabackin	Hakan Rosengren	PeeWee Ellis
Al Green	Anthony Newley	Julius Baker	William Watson	PeeWee Russell	Bill Evans
Johnny Hartman	Wayne Newton	George Barrere	Frank Wess	Alessandro Santini	Sonny Fortune
Jon Hendricks	Roy Orbison	Laura Barron	Mike Wofford	Artie Shaw	Bud Freeman
Levon Helm	Wilson Pickett	Jeanne Baxstresser	John Wummer	Anton Stadler	Chico Freeman
Don Henley	Robert Plant	Anthony Braxton	Eugenia Zuckerman	Richard Stoltzman	Kenny G
Englebert Humperdinck	Elvis Presley	Toria Burrell		Frederick Thurston	Jan Garbarek
Julio Iglesias	Prince	Wyman Carver	<b>Prominent Clarinetists</b>	Evan Ziporyn	Kenny Garrett
Michael Jackson	Arthur Prysock	Buddy Collette	Heinrich Joseph Baermann		Stan Getz
Alan Jackson	John Raitt	Louise Dixon	Sidney Bechet	<b>Prominent Saxophone Players</b>	Jimmy Giuffre
Mick Jagger	Lou Rawls	Eric Dolphy	Joseph Beer	Cannonball Adderley	Dexter Gordon
Al Jarreau	Otis Redding	Ann Drummond	Barney Bigard	Jamey Aebersold	Gigi Gryce
Billy Joel	Lou Reed	Rich Fredoli	Acker Bilk	Albert Ayler	Donald Harrison
Elton John	Charlie Rich	Chico Freeman	Jack Brymer	Gato Barbieri	Antonio Hart
Tom Jones	Little Richard	Steve Frisbie	Don Byron	Gary Bartz	Coleman Hawkins
Jack Jones	Smokey Robinson	James Galway	Benny Carter	Sidney Bechet	Julius Hemphill
Salif Keita	Jimmie Rodgers	Marc Grauvels	Jonathan Cohler	Tim Berne	Woody Herman
R. Kelly	Neil Sedaka	Deborah Harris	Michael Collins	Dave Binny	Vincent Herring
Kris Kristofferson	Paul Simon	Holly Hoffman	Eddie Daniels	Anthony Braxton	Johnny Hodges
Frankie Laine	Frank Sinatra	Jeffrey Kahner	Buddy DeFranco	Michael Breder	Chris Hunter
Steve Lawrence	Bruce Springsteen	Mindy Kaufman	Gervase De Peyer	Marion Brown	Jane Ira Bloom
John Lennon	Sting	William Kincaid	Fabio diCasola	Sam Butera	Illinois Jacquet
Gordon Lightfoot	James Taylor	Rahsaan Roland Kirk	Johnny Dodds	Benny Carter	Louis Jordan
Kenny Loggins	Mel Torme	Walfrid Kujala	Eric Dolphy	Harry Carney	Rahsaan Roland Kirk
Barry Manilow	Randy Travis	Eleanor Lawrence	Jimmy Dorsey	Emilio Castillo	Eric Kloss
Bob Marley	Travis Tritt	Gerardo Levy	Pete Fountain	Thomas Chapin	Lee Konitz
Dean Martin	Conway Twitty	Herbie Mann	Stan Getz		Stephen Kupka

Prominent Musicians *continued*

Steve Lacy	<b>Prominent Trumpet/ Cornet Players</b>	<b>Prominent Trombone Players</b>	Jascha Heifetz	William Primrose	Jeff Beck
Jimmie Lunceford	Red Allen	Ray Anderson	Ilya Kaler	Sammy Rhodes	Adrian Belew
Jimmy Lyons	Maurice Andre	David Baker	Fritz Kreisler	Anna Schaum	George Benson
Andy Mackay	Louis Armstrong	Bob Brookmeyer	Alexander Markov	Lionel Tertis	Chuck Berry
Branford Marsalis	Chet Baker	Emile Christian	Yehudi Menuhin	Ciara Webb	Dickey Betts
Jackie McLean	Bix Beiderbecke	Tommy Dorsey	Midori	Pinchas Zuckerman	Ritchie Blackmore
Charles McPherson	Bunny Berigan	Eddie Edwards	Nathan Milstein	<b>Prominent Cellists</b>	Mike Bloomfield
Skip Mesquite	Budddy Bolden	Robin Eubanks	Anne-Sophie Mutter	Paul Bazelaire	Roy Buchanan
Gerry Mulligan	Chris Botti	Wycliffe Gordon	Mark O'Conner	Hugo Becker	Peter Buck
David Murray	Clifford Brown	Al Grey	David Oistrakh	Hugo Becker	Lindsey Buckingham
Oliver Nelson	Don Cherry	Slide Hampton	Nicolo Paganini	Ennio Bolognini	James Burton
Lennie Niehaus	Bill Coleman	J. C. Higgenbotham	Gyorgy Pauk	Pablo Casals	Charlie Christian
David "Fathead" Newman	Miles Davis	J.J. Johnson	Itzhak Perlman	Karl Davidov	Eric Clapton
Walter Parazaidar	Roy Eldridge	Delfeayo Marsalis	Jean-Luc Ponty	Steven De'ak	Roy Clark
Charlie Parker	Maynard Ferguson	Glenn Miller	Vadim Repin	Jacqueline Du Pré	Kurt Cobain
Maceo Parker	John Birks "Dizzy" Gillespie	Miff Mole	Ruggiero Ricci	Jean-Louis Duport	Eddie Cochran
Lenny Pickett	Hakon Hardenberger	Kid Ory	Nadja Salerno-Sonnenberg	Jean-Pierre Duport	Ry Cooder
Dewey Redman	Freddie Hubbard	Roswell Rudd	Gil Shaham	Maurice Eisenberg	Steve Cropper
Joshua Redman	Harry James	Jack Teagarden	Stuft Smith	Emmanuel Feuerman	Dick Dale
Sun Ra	Stan Kenton	Steve Turre	Isaac Stern	Pierre Fournier	Dave Davies
Sam Rivers	Yank Lawson	Kai Winding	Maxim Vengerov	Eric Friedlander	Alfonso Aguerra Dergal
Sonny Rollins	Wynton Marsalis	Dickie Wells	Joe Venoti	Ofra Harnoy	Bo Diddley
David Sanborn	Thomas Miller	<b>Prominent Violinists</b>	Henryk Weiniaski	Lynn Harrell	The Edge
Archie Shepp	Lee Morgan	Salvator Accar	Eugene Ysaye	Stephen Kates	Herb Ellis
Wayne Shorter	Red Nichols	Billy Bang	Efrem Zimbalist	Yo-Yo Ma	Tal Farlow
Norbert Stachel	Fats Navarro	Joshua Bell	Pinchas Zuckerman	Vladimir Orloff	Jose Feliciano
Sonny Stitt	King Oliver	Ole Bull	<b>Prominent Viola Players</b>	Gregor Piatagorsky	Lester Flatt
Buddy Tate	Arturo Sandoval	Regina Carter	Mischa Amory	William Pleeth	John Fogerty
Henry Threadgill	Doc Severinson	Sarah Chang	Yuri Bashmet	Mstislav Rostropovich	Robert Fripp
Frankie Trumbauer	Charlie Shavers	Mischa Elman	Sally Beamish	Daniel Shafron	Bill Frissell
Carlos Ward	Woody Shaw	George Enesco	Georgi Bezrukov	Michael Stahel	Alexis Froudarakis
David Ware	Scott Smith	Eugene Fodor	Wolfram Christ	Janos Starker	John Frusciante
Grover Washington, Jr.	Charlie Spivak	Ivan Galamian	Anton Dvorak	Arturo Toscanini	Jerry Garcia
Bobby Watson	Clark Terry	Joseph Gingold	Rivka Golarie	Tabea Zimmerman	David Gilmour
Ben Webster	Sergei WaKariaka	Ivry Gitlis	Paul Hindemith	<b>Prominent Guitar Players</b>	Freddie Green
Paul Winter	Kirk Whalum	Stephane Grappelli	Nobuko Imai	Duane Allman	Peter Green
Phil Woods	Cootie Williams	Arthur Grumiaux	Kim Kashkashian	Jesus Alvarez	Grant Green
Pete Yellin		Hilary Hahn	David Kates	Trey Anastasio	Jonny Greenwood
Lester Young			Rosemary Nalden	Denis Azabagic	Buddy Guy
John Zorn					Jim Hall

## Prominent Musicians *continued*

Kirk Hammett	Keith Richards	Stanley Clark	Gary Peacock	Pete Seeger	Clifford Curzon
George Harrison	Robbie Robertson	Les Claypool	Neils-Henning Pederson	Mike Snider	Gyorge Cziffra
Lightnin' Hopkins	Mick Ronson	Bootsy Collins	Oscar Pettiford	Ralph Stanley	Bella Davidowich
Steve Howe	Carlos Santana	Arni Egilsson	Dave Pomeroy	Tony Trischka	Alicia de Larrocha
Tony Iommi	Joe Satriani	John Entwistle	Tommy Potter	Eric Weissberg	Christof Eschenbach
Joan Jett	Andres Segovia	David Finck	Rufus Reed		Edwin Fischer
Robert Johnson	Slash	Flea	Steve Rodby	<b>Prominent Mandolin</b>	Leon Fleisher
Jorma Kaukonen	Stephen Stills	Jimmy Garrison	Curly Russell	<b>Players</b>	Nelson Freire
B.B. King	Andy Summers	Leonard Gaskin	Leland Sklar	John Duffy	Emil Gilels
Freddy King	Kim Thayll	Larry Graham	Chris Squire	David Grisman	Leopold Godowsky
Earl Klugh	Richard Thomason	Charlie Haden	Stan Stewart	Jimmy Guidreau	Glenn Gould
Mark Knopfler	Ali Farka Toure	Bob Haggart	Sting	Doyle Lawson	Andrei Gravitov
Paul Kossoff	Pete Townshend	Steve Harris	Neil Stubenhaus	Jesse McReynolds	Myra Hess
Robby Krieger	Ike Turner	Percy Heath	Steve Swallow	Bill Monroe	David Holzman
Yngwe Marmstein	Steve Vai	Milt Hinton	Mike Visceglia	Bobby Osborne	Vladimir Horowitz
Brian May	Eddie VanHalen	Dave Holland	Miroslav Vitous	Herschel Sizemore	Eugene Istomin
Roger McGuinn	StevieRay Vaughan	Chubby Jackson	Wilbur Ware	Joe Stuart	Leos Janacek
John Mclaughlin	Henry Vestine	James Jamerson	Victor Wooten	Earl Taylor	Byron Janis
Pat Metheny	Waddy Wachtel	Marc Johnson		Frank Wakefield	Ladislav Jelenek
Jerry Miller	T-Bone Walker	Percy Jones	<b>Prominent Banjo Players</b>	Roland White	Wilhem Kempff
Wes Montgomery	Jack White	Sam Jones	Dave "Stringbean" Akeman		Yevgeny Kissin
Carlos Montoya	Johnny Winter	Gary Karr	Ron Block	<b>Prominent Classical</b>	Stephen Kovacevich
Thurston Moore	Zalman Yanovsky	John Kirby	J. D. Crowe	<b>Pianists</b>	Ruth Laredo
Tom Morello	Narciso Yepes	Lenny Kliminster	Erik Darling	Martha Argerich	Dinu Lipatti
Ed O'Brien	Neil Young	Scott LaFaro	Doug Dillard	Claudio Arrau	Radu Lupu
Jimmy Page	Angus Young	Will Lee	Bill Evans	Vladimir Ashkenazy	Arturo Benedetti
Joe Pass	Frank Zappa	Geddy Lee	Bela Fleck	Emmanuel Ax	Michelangeli
Les Paul		Tony Levin	Tony Furtado	Wilhelm Backhaus	Benno Moisevitch
Joe Perry	<b>Prominent Bassists</b>	Christian McBride	John Hartford	Daniel Barenboim	Dudley Moore
Bucky Pizzarelli	Aston "Family Man" Barrett	Paul McCartney	Marc Horowitz	Margaret Baxstreser	Ivan Moravec
John Pizzarelli	Victor Bailey	Jon McVie	Bill Keith	Leonard Bernstein	Guiomar Novaes
Johnny Ramone	Jimmy Blanton	Edgar Meyer	Tim Lake	Jorge Bolet	John Ogden
Lee Ranaldo	Bill Black	Marcus Miller	Steve Martin	Victor Borge	Yoshiko Okada
Lou Reed	Cliff Burton	Charles Mingus	James McKinney	Alfred Brendel	Ursula Oppens
Vernon Reid	Ray Brown	Walter Page	Eddie Peabody	Shura Cherkassky	Ignatz Paderewski
Django Reinhardt	Ron Carter	Pino Palladino	Don Reno	Van Cliburn	Joanne Polk
Randy Rhoads	Paul Chambers	Jaco Pastorious	Earl Scruggs	Alfred Cortot	Maurizio Pollini

## Prominent Musicians *continued*

Andre Previn  
Sergei Rachmaninoff  
Sviatoslav Richter  
Artur Rubenstein  
Andreas Schiff  
Arthur Schnabel  
Peter Serkin  
Rudolf Serkin  
Vladimir Sofronitsky  
Rosalyn Tureck  
Mitsuko Uchida  
Andre Watts  
Alexis Weissenberg  
Maria Yudina  
Krystian Zimerman

### Prominent Jazz Pianists

Muhal Richard Abrams  
Toshiko Akiyoshi  
Mose Allison  
Kenny Barron  
Count Basie  
David Benoit  
Eubie Blake  
Paul Bley  
Dave Brubeck  
Billy Childs  
Nat “King” Cole  
Harry Connick, Jr.  
Chick Corea  
John Eaton  
Duke Ellington  
Bill Evans  
Red Garland  
Errol Garner  
Benny Green  
Herbie Hancock

Barry Harris  
Fletcher Henderson  
Earl “Fatha” Hines  
Abdullah Ibrahim  
D. D. Jackson  
Ahmad Jamal  
Bob James  
Keith Jarrett  
James P. Johnson  
Scott Joplin  
Jeffrey Keeser  
Billy Kyle  
Donald Lambert  
Mark Levine  
Ramsay Lewis  
Ellis Marsalis

Junior Mance  
Lyle Mays  
Les McCann  
Marian McPartland  
Thelonious Monk  
Jelly Roll Morton  
Oscar Peterson  
Bud Powell  
Sun Ra  
Jack Reilly  
Joe Sample  
George Shearing  
Horace Silver  
Nina Simone  
Willy “the Lion” Smith  
Martial Solal  
Paul Stark  
Billy Strayhorn  
Ralph Sutton  
Art Tatum  
Billy Taylor

Cecil Taylor  
Lennie Tristano  
Joe Turner  
McCoy Tyner  
Chucho Valdez  
Fats Waller  
Randy Weston  
Mary Lou Williams  
Teddy Wilson  
Joe Zawinul

### Prominent Rock/Pop Pianists

Greg Allman  
Tori Amos  
Tony Banks  
Roy Bittan  
Garry Booker  
James Booker  
Henry Butler  
John Cale  
Wendy Carlos  
Ray Charles  
Jon Cleary  
George Duke  
Keith Emerson  
Brian Eno  
Michael Feinstein  
Jan Hammer  
Jools Holland  
Bruce Hornsby  
Garth Hudson  
Billy Joel  
Dr. John  
Elton John  
Tony Kaye  
Alicia Keys

Carole King  
Al Kooper  
Oscar Levant  
Chuck Leavell  
Jerry Lee Lewis  
Professor Longhair  
Mark Mancina  
Ray Manzarek  
Moby  
Peter Nero  
Steve Nieve  
Steve Porcaro  
Billy Preston  
Little Richard  
David Sacious  
Bobby Short  
Huey “Piano” Smith  
Benmont Tench  
Allen Toussaint  
Rick Wakeman  
Roger Williams  
Stevie Wonder  
Bernie Worrell  
Warren Zevon

### Prominent Vibraphonists

Milt Jackson  
Lionel Hampton  
Red Norvo  
Cal Tjader

### Prominent Drummers and Percussionists

Rashied Ali  
Carl Allen  
Scott Amendola  
Jack Ashford  
Ginger Baker  
Joey Baron  
Louis Bellson  
Eddie Blackwell  
Brian Blade  
Art Blakely  
John Bonham  
Frank Briggs  
Bill Bruford  
Joe Butler  
Vinnie Calaiuto  
Terri Lynne Carrington  
Dennis Chambers  
Dennis Charles  
Dave Clark  
Kenny Clarke  
Jimmy Cobb  
Grant Collins  
Paulo Compas  
Andrew Cyrille  
Jack DeJohnette  
Baby Dodds  
Sheila E.  
Peter Erskine  
Peter Escovido  
Mick Fleetwood  
Al Foster  
Panama Francis  
Steve Gadd  
David Garibaldi  
Jamey Haddad

Louis Hayes  
Roy Haynes  
Albert “Tootie” Heath  
Billy Higgins  
Gary Holland  
Stix Hooper  
Elvin Jones  
Philly Joe Jones  
Jim Keltner  
Gene Krupa  
Corky Laing  
Machito  
Shelly Manne  
Sherrie Maricle  
Peppe Merolla  
Keith Moon  
Paul Motian  
Babatunde Olatunji  
Ben Perowsky  
Tito Puente  
Bernard Purdie  
Buddy Rich  
Max Roach  
Mongo Santamaria  
Ari Sills  
Ringo Starr  
Todd Sucherman  
Grady Tate  
Ed Thigpen  
Arnaldo Vacca  
Glen Velez  
Kenny Washington  
Charlie Watts  
Jeff Watts  
Chick Webb  
Dave Weckl  
Tony Williams

## Prominent Musicians *continued*

### Prominent Big Band/ Radio Band/ Latin Band Leaders

Ina Ray Hutton	Gordon Jenkins	Buddy Rogers
Desi Arnaz	Isham Jones	Paul Scheaffer
Mitchell Ayres	Thad Jones/Mel Lewis	Raymond Scott
Charlie Barnet	Sammy Kaye	Doc Severinson
Paul Baron	Stan Kenton	Artie Shaw
Count Basie	Andy Kirk	Phil Spitalni
Sidney Bechet	Gene Krupa	Dick Stabile
Bunny Berigan	Kay Kyser	Axel Stordahl
Ben Bernie	Lester Lanin	John Scott Trotter
Les Brown	Elliot Lawrence	Rudy Vallee
Cab Calloway	Guy Lombardo	Chick Webb
Pupi Campo	Vincent Lopez	Ted Weems
Candido	Machito	Lawrence Welk
Benny Carter	Wynton Marsalis	Paul Weston
Harry Connick, Jr.	Clyde McCoy	Paul Whiteman
Bob Crosby	Ray McKinley	Meredith Willson
Xavier Cugat	Jay McShan	Teddy Wilson
Meyer Davis	George Melachrino	Victor Young
The Dorsey Brothers	Glenn Miller	
Eddie Duchin	Charles Mingus	
Billy Eckstine	Noro Morales	
Duke Ellington	JellyRoll Morton	
Dizzy Gillespie	Benny Moten	
Al Goodman	Ozzie Nelson	
Benny Goodman	Red Nichols	
Lionel Hampton	Ray Noble	
Coleman Hawkins	Red Norvo	
Horace Heidt	Chico O'Farrill	
Fletcher Henderson	King Oliver	
Woody Herman	Kid Ory	
Illinois Jacquet	Tito Puente	
Harry James	Sun Ra	
	Harry Reser	
	Alvino Rey	
	Buddy Rich	



## Music Venues in New York City

Apollo Theater  
253 West 125th St.  
New York, NY  
(212) 531-5305

Avery Fisher Hall  
Lincoln Center  
62nd–66th Sts. on Broadway  
New York, NY  
(212) 875-5030

BargeMusic  
Fulton Ferry Landing  
Brooklyn, NY  
(718) 624-2083

Brooklyn Academy of Music  
30 Lafayette Ave.  
Brooklyn, NY  
(718) 636-4100

Brooklyn Center for  
the Performing Arts at  
Brooklyn College  
2900 Campus Road  
Brooklyn, NY 11210  
(718) 951-4600

Carnegie Hall  
Seventh Avenue and 57th St.  
New York, NY  
(212) 247-7800  
• Zankel Hall

College of Staten Island-  
Concert Hall Theater  
2800 Victory Boulevard  
Staten Island, NY 10314  
(718) 982-2787

Concert Hall,  
Lehman College  
250 Bedford Park  
Boulevard West  
Bronx, NY 10468  
(718) 960-8833

Jazz at Lincoln Center  
Frederick P. Rose Hall  
Broadway at 60th St.  
New York, NY  
(212) 721-6500

The Julliard School of Music  
Lincoln Center  
62nd–66th Sts. on Broadway  
New York, NY  
(212) 799-5000

Lincoln Center  
62nd–66th Sts.  
New York, NY  
(212) 875-5050  
• Alice Tully Hall  
• Avery Fisher Hall  
• Metropolitan Opera  
• New York State Theater  
• Vivian Beaumont Theater

Merkin Concert Hall  
129 West 67th St.  
New York, NY  
(212) 501-3330

Miller Theater at  
Columbia University  
Broadway at 116th St.  
New York, NY  
(212) 854-7799

New York City Center  
130 West 56th St.  
New York, NY  
(212) 581-1212

Queens College Concert Hall  
& Colden Auditorium  
Kissena Blvd. & Long Island  
Expressway  
Queens, NY  
(718) 793-8080

Symphony Space  
Broadway at 95th St.  
New York, NY  
(212) 864-5400

Town Hall  
123 West 43rd St.  
New York, NY  
(212) 840-2924

**For additional information about  
classical music, log on to  
[www.ny.com/music/classical](http://www.ny.com/music/classical)**

**For additional information about  
Jazz and Pop/Rock venues, log on to  
[www.ny.com/clubs/jazz](http://www.ny.com/clubs/jazz).**

**For current information about  
concerts, clubs, or artists in your  
area, check local newspapers and  
magazines such as *New York* or  
*Time Out New York*.**

## Careers in Music

Agent  
Attorney  
Community Arts Manager  
Community Development Specialist  
Composer  
Conductor  
Critic  
Ethnomusicologist  
Instrument Designer  
Instrument Repairperson  
Music Arranger  
Music Editor  
Music Educator  
Music Librarian  
Music Programmer  
Music Publicist  
Music Publisher  
Music Software Designer  
Music Therapist  
Music Tour Coordinator  
Performing Arts Administrator  
Performing Musician, Instrumental and Vocal Music  
Recording Engineer  
Retail Music Salesperson  
Road Manager  
Sacred Music Musician  
Sound Designer  
Sound Technician  
Video Music Careers  
Voice Therapist

For descriptions of each of these careers and additional information about them, log on to [www.menc.org](http://www.menc.org). Click on “jobs” and then on “careers.”

# Glossary from *Music! Its Role & Importance in Our Lives*

Reprinted with Permission

## **a capella**

singing without instrumental accompaniment

## **a tempo**

in normal time, or a return to the preceding tempo

## **aboriginal**

the original or first people to inhabit a place

## **absolute music**

music without extramusical associations, as opposed to program music

## **absolute pitch**

the ability to recognize and reproduce pitches exactly

## **accelerando**

(aht-cheh-leh-RAHN-doh) a gradual increase in tempo; gradually growing faster

## **accent**

the emphasis placed on a beat or sound

## **accidental**

a sharp, flat, or natural occurring outside of the given key signature within a composition

## **acculturation**

the mutual influence of different cultures in close contact

## **adagio**

(ah-DAHJ-ee-oh) slow tempo, but not as slow as largo

## **aerophone**

an instrument that produces sound by a vibrating column of air, including wind instruments such as woodwinds and brass, and reed instruments such as the accordion and the organ

## **aesthetic**

characterized by a heightened sensitivity to the content, form, or emotional impact of an artistic work or event

## **affection**

a cataloged feeling used during the Baroque period

## **aleatory music**

music in which composers deliberately leave parts of the composition and performance undetermined and at the discretion of performers

## **allegretto**

a little slower than allegro

## **allegro**

fast and lively tempo

## **alto**

the low female register; *see also* contralto

## **andante**

moderately slow; a walking tempo

## **andantino**

a little faster than andante

## **animato**

with spirit; antecedent term for the question half of a melodic phrase

## **anthropologist**

a scholar who studies the physical and cultural characteristics and social customs of a group of people

## **antiphonal**

describing musical groups that perform alternately in a call-and-response manner

## **apartheid**

a policy of racial segregation

## **aria**

a song for a solo singer and orchestra

## **arpeggio**

(ahr-PEJ-ee-oh) a broken chord whose pitches are heard successively

## **arrangement**

an adaptation of a composition from one medium to another

## **arranger**

a musician who reworks existing musical material

## **art song**

a composition for solo voice and piano

## **articulation**

clarity and distinct rendition in musical performance

## **atonal**

without tonality or a tonal center

## **audiation**

the capacity to think sound

## **aural**

relating to hearing

## **authenticity**

performing music as closely as possible to the way it was performed at the time it was created

## **backbeat**

in popular music, accents on beats 2 and 4 that answer the normal accents on 1 and 3

## **background music**

music that has no visual or logical source

## **ballad**

a musical form consisting of verses in narrative style, often with a repeated refrain

## **ballet**

a refined style of classical dance emphasizing the verticality of the body, an outward rotation of the legs with fluid foot- and legwork, and virtuoso turns and jumps

## **band**

a large instrumental ensemble consisting primarily or solely of wind and percussion instruments

## **bar line**

vertical dividing line between measures on the musical staff

## **baritone**

the intermediate male voice

## **Baroque period**

the stylistic period between approximately 1600 and 1750

## **bass**

a lower male register with a rich, robust, resonant, and full quality

## **bass clef (♭)**

symbol that indicates the placement of F below middle C

## **basso continuo**

bass line and accompanying chords for keyboard instruments, used extensively in the Baroque period

## **basso profundo**

the lowest male voice, with a dark, rich, powerful quality

## **beat**

a steady recurring pulse

## **bebop**

a complex and sophisticated type of improvised jazz; music for listening rather than dancing

**bel canto**

a style characterized by lyrical and flowing phrases, beauty of vocal color, and brilliant technique

**binary form**

a two-part form

**blue note**

a selected pitch, usually on the third and seventh degrees of the scale, whose intonation is altered at the discretion of the performer

**bluegrass**

a type of American country music that uses acoustic instruments

**blues**

a genre of African American music that often expresses frustration, sadness, or longing

**book**

the story and the dialogue of a musical

**bouffée**

(bu-RAY) a French seventeenth century dance usually in quick duple meter with a single upbeat

**brass**

wind instruments that derive their sound from vibrations transmitted through cup-shaped mouthpieces, including the trumpet, French horn, trombone, and tuba

**break**

a measure or two where everyone stops playing except the soloist

**bridge**

a connective part of a composition

**Broadway musical**

a dramatic stage form that combines the arts of acting and singing

**bugaku**

danced portions of Japanese gogaku; *see also* gogaku

**cadence**

a breathing break

**cadenza**

a section of a piece designed to show the virtuosity of a soloist

**cakewalk**

a dance with syncopated rhythms that may represent an early form of jazz

**call and response**

a question-and-answer pattern in which a group responds to a leader

**calypso**

folk-style music from the Caribbean islands

**canción ranchera**

(kahn-see-OHN ran- CHE-rah) a popular type of Mexican song, usually in AAB form, performed by mariachi bands

**canon**

a musical form where parts enter at different times but have the same melody throughout

**cantata**

an accompanied vocal work in a number of movements with a sacred or a secular text

**cha-cha**

a rhythmic Latin American dance with the basic pattern of three steps and a shuffle

**chaconne**

(shah-KOHN) continuous variations based on an underlying repeated harmonic progression

**chamber music**

music written during the Classical period for small ensembles

**chance music**

music in which aspects such as melody, rhythm, dynamics, timbre, and form are left wholly or partly to the discretion and creativity of the performer; *see also* aleatory

**character theme**

a melody associated with a particular character that recurs throughout a film or musical work

**Charleston**

an athletic dance that includes kicks and inward leg rotations on syncopated beats of the music

**chart**

jazz score, often abbreviated

**child prodigy**

someone who excels at a very early age

**chorale**

a hymn tune

**chorale prelude**

a composition that serves as an introduction to the singing by the congregation

**chord**

simultaneous combination of at least three different pitches

**chordophone**

an instrument that produces sound when a string or chord is struck, rubbed, or plucked

**chromatic**

incorporating tones from a musical scale consisting entirely of half steps

**classical music**

a style of “art” music that stands apart from traditional or popular music

**clave**

(KLAH-vay) a basic rhythmic pattern that provides the foundation for the complex rhythms played by multiple drums

**clef**

a symbol indicating pitch designations for the lines and spaces of the staff

**click-track**

a series of clicks that allow the conductor to synchronize an orchestra’s accompaniment to a film

**coda**

a short concluding section of a piece of music that essentially ties together the main thematic threads and ends the piece

**coloratura**

the highest female voice that is light and flexible enough to perform scales and trills, particularly in vocal melodies of eighteenth- and nineteenth-century operatic arias; a soprano who performs such passages

**commercialization**

exploitation chiefly for financial gain

**complete cadence**

a breathing break that terminates on the tonic triad, with the tonic tone appearing as both the highest and lowest pitch

**composer**

a person who creates musical works

**composition**

the craft of putting together sounds to create a musical work

**compound meter**

a division of the pulse into groupings of three segments

**concert band**

an expanded version of the wind and percussion sections of the orchestra

**concertino**

the section of a Baroque concerto played by a small group of soloists

**concerto**

solo parts alternated with a group of instruments

**concerto grosso**

a work in which a small group of soloists plays in alternation with a full orchestra

**conductor**

the director of an orchestra, choir, or other performing group

**conjunct**

employing successive pitches of the scale; stepwise movement

**conjunct melody**

a melody formed by successive pitches of the scale

**conjunto**

dance music created by Mexicans in Texas

**consequent**

the answer of a melodic phrase

**consonance**

absence of tension or discord in music

**contemporary**

music or art that is current; also, composers who lived during the same historical periods as each other are known as *contemporaries*

**continuo**

an accompaniment consisting of a harpsichord sounding the chords and a viola da gamba reinforcing the bass line

**contour**

the shape of a melody or its rise and fall

**contrafactum**

compositional technique of writing new lyrics to an existing melody

**contralto**

a low female register with a full, rich, dark, and powerful quality

**contrapuntal**

in the style of counterpoint; the combining of melodic lines

**cool jazz**

jazz style of the 1950s

**counterpoint**

music that counters one note against another

**countersubject**

a secondary melodic pattern used at the same time as the principal subject

**countertenor**

the highest male voice with a falsetto range and quality and a register in the female alto range

**country music**

a popular musical style that began in rural areas of the South and West

**creative license**

the liberty that artists take in reinterpreting another artist's work

**crescendo**

a gradual increase in the loudness of a sound

**crossover**

a merging of styles

**cue**

the specific music for a particular scene in a film or television production

**culture**

the customs, beliefs, language, arts, and institutions of a group of people that are learned and transmitted within the group

**decibel**

unit for measuring volume of sound

**decrescendo**

a gradual decrease in the loudness of a sound

**descriptive music**

another name for program music; music that represents images, stories, or poetic ideas

**development**

the section of the sonata form in which thematic reworkings and modifications occur

**dialogue**

the spoken lines of a play or musical show

**diatonic**

the tones of a major or minor scale

**diminuendo**

a gradual decrease in the loudness of a sound; decrescendo

**dirge**

a slow, mournful hymn or lament

**disjunct**

a melody formed by intervals larger than a second

**dissonance**

discord in music, suggesting a state of tension

**dodecaphony**

twelve-tone music

**dominant**

the fifth pitch of a diatonic scale; the chord built on the fifth degree of the diatonic scale

**Dorian mode**

a scale with the pattern of whole step, half, whole, whole, whole, half, and whole

**double bass**

the largest instrument in the bowed, stringed family of instruments

**downbeat**

the accented first beat in a measure

**drone**

a continuous note of fixed pitch serving as permanent bass

**drum machine**

a machine with the sounds of a whole range of percussion instruments stored in its memory

**dubbing**

putting all the elements of sound—dialogue, sound effects, and music—onto one soundtrack

**duet**

composition for two performers

**duple**

marked by beats grouped into sets of two (strong-weak)

**dynamics**

the volume of sound; the loudness or softness of a musical passage

**electronic music**

music generated or altered by electronic means

**electrophone**

an instrument that generates sound from electricity



**empathy**

the sharing of another person's feelings or emotions

**ensemble**

a cooperative musical expression

**entr'acte music**

light instrumental music that is performed between acts of an opera

**episode**

a section of a fugue in which the subject or main theme is not heard; a connective passage

**ethnomusicologist**

a scholar who studies the music of different cultural groups

**exposition**

the opening section of a sonata form in which the main thematic material is given its first complete statement

**Expressionism**

a musical style that subjectively explores deep inner feelings

**extramusical**

the idea that inspires a programmatic piece of music

**fanfare**

a short, showy tune, usually written for brass, played to honor important people or announce an important event

**"felt" time**

an aspect of music that controls the listener's sense of how much time has passed

**fermata**

the sustaining of a pitch

**finale**

concluding movement or passage in a musical work

**flat**

symbol (♭) that lowers a pitch by one half step

**folk music**

uncomplicated music that speaks directly of everyday matters

**foreshadow**

to suggest actions or events before they happen

**form**

the structure and design of a composition, incorporating repetition, contrast, unity, and variety

**forte**

loud (*f*)

**fortissimo**

very loud (*ff*)

**free-form jazz**

jazz of recent times that does not use a set tune as the basis of improvisation, but rather allows the performers to interact and to generate their own composition

**fugue**

a rich, polyphonic composition consisting of a series of successive melody imitations

**fundamental**

the main pitch from which the harmonics of the overtone series are generated

**fusion**

a combination of jazz and rock

**gamelan**

a Balinese music ensemble or performing group

**genre**

a particular type of music with a distinctive form or sound

**gig**

an engagement to perform music, especially jazz

**glissando**

a continuous or sliding movement from one pitch to the other

**globalization**

the process of making information accessible to a worldwide audience

**gogaku**

Japanese orchestral music (sometimes with singing) that is used at imperial court, ceremonies, and shrines; *see also* bugaku

**gospel music**

spirited songs accompanied by tambourines, drums, and piano

**grand opera**

a type of music drama in which everything is sung

**grand staff**

combined treble and bass staves

**half cadence**

*see* incomplete cadence

**half step**

the closest pitch above or below any given pitch on the keyboard, such as C to C<sup>♭</sup> or F to E

**harmonics**

a series of tones generated by the fundamental tone

**harmonizing**

the ability to invent on the spot a vocal line that will complement a melody

**harmony**

the combination of simultaneous vertical blocks of different tones

**heterophony**

a musical texture that occurs when melodic variants of the same tune are performed simultaneously

**hip-hop**

a genre of popular music that addresses social issues in highly rhythmic and usually spoken lyrics over a driving dance beat

**homophonic**

relating to musical texture in which accompanying harmony supports the main melody

**homophony**

a single melody with chordal accompaniment

**hook**

the motive or "grabber" phrase in a song that often accompanies the words of the song's title

**hymn**

a strophic song sung within a religious service by the congregation

**hyperinstrument**

an instrument that, with the help of a computer, responds to live musicians

**idée fixe**

a fixed melodic idea that recurs throughout all movements of a symphony

**imitation**

exact repetition or resemblance between parts

**Impressionism**

French style of atmospheric music of the late nineteenth century

**improvisation**

spontaneous musical invention

**incidental music**

music that occurs in connection with a drama

**incomplete cadence**

a resting point at the end of a musical phrase that does not sound finished, because the pause is on the dominant seventh chord; a half cadence marking a midpoint within a larger musical thought

**indeterminance**

term referring to music that has elements of chance or a great deal of freedom

**intensity**

degree of loudness; dynamics

**interlocking rhythms**

a complex rhythmic line created by several individual rhythms that intermingle with each other; *see also* kotekan

**interval**

the distance in pitch between two tones

**inversion**

arranging the tones of a chord in an order different from the way they are derived; performing a melody by turning the contour upside down

**jazz**

a musical form distinguished by its reliance on improvisation and its rhythmic urgency

**jitterbug**

a fast dance to swing music of the 1940s

**kecak**

(keh-CHAK) a Balinese musical theatre work based on the Hindu epic *Ramayana*

**key**

the basic scale and tonality of a composition

**key signature**

designation of sharps or flats at the beginning of a composition to indicate its basic scale and tonality

**keynote**

the tonic pitch; number one of the scale

**kotekan**

(ko-TEH-kahn) the Balinese term for interlocking rhythms; *see also* interlocking rhythms

**kriti**

a Hindu religious song that is sung in praise of a particular god or gods

**lakalaka**

the national dance of Tonga

**lali**

a warrior dance

**largo**

very slow

**legato**

a smooth articulation of a series of tones, each connected to the next

**lento**

slow

**librettist**

the person who writes the text of a musical

**libretto**

the text of an opera or musical, including dialogue and lyrics

**lieder**

German art songs

**Lindy Hop**

a jazzy dance in which couples swing, balance, and twirl

**lyricist**

the writer of lyrics, particularly for popular songs

**lyrics**

the words of a song; verbal messages set to music

**madrigal**

a nonreligious vocal work in several parts (usually five)

**mag track**

a film similar to audiotape coated with an oxide surface

**major scale**

a sequence of eight pitches built on the pattern of two whole (w) steps, one half (h) step, three whole steps, and one half step

**major triad**

three tones that form a major third (bottom) and a minor third (top), such as C E G; in a major key; the tonic, subdominant, and dominant chords are all major triads

**mambo**

a type of ballroom dance that originated in Cuba

**march**

music with a steady beat in 2/4, 4/4, or 6/8 time, suitable for a parade or procession

**mariachi**

a Mexican musical group with several violins, trumpets, a large bass guitar, and special five- and six-string guitars

**marimba**

a wooden xylophone that can be played by as many as eight musicians

**Mass**

the principal form of the Catholic religious service, or liturgy

**measure**

the division of beats into a defined group separated by a bar line

**melismatic**

a melody in which each syllable of text is set to several pitches

**melody**

an intentionally organized succession of musical tones

**membranophone**

an instrument that produces sound when a membrane or skin is struck or rubbed

**mestizo**

a Spanish term for “mixed culture”

**metaphor**

a figure of speech in which one word or phrase is used to substitute for or designates another

**meter**

a rhythmic measure of a certain number of beats; the aural aspect of music in which a certain number of beats are grouped together

**mezzo**

medium

**mezzo forte ( *mf* )**

medium loud

**mezzo piano**

medium soft

**mezzo soprano**

the intermediate female voice; one who sings in the lower part of the soprano range

**MIDI**

computer language that was invented to help synthesizers and other pieces of musical equipment communicate with one another

**minimalism**

a style of music that stresses the element of repetition with changes dictated by a rule or system

**minor scale**

a sequence of eight pitches built on the pattern of one whole (w) step, one half (h) step, two whole steps, one half step, and two whole steps

**minor triad**

three tones that form a minor third (bottom) and a major third (top), such as C E<sup>-</sup> G; in a minor key; the tonic, subdominant, and dominant triads are minor; although the dominant is frequently altered to make it a major triad

**minuet**

an old French dance, rather slow and stately, in triple meter

**mixed meter**

changing meter

**mode**

diatonic scale other than major or minor, especially the Dorian, Phrygian, Lydian, and Mixolydian, used extensively during the Middle Ages and Renaissance

**moderato**

moderate tempo

**modulation**

a change of key

**monologue**

a dramatic speech or song delivered by one character

**monophonic**

music that has a single melodic line of notes without harmonies or melody in counterpoint. In singing, the term refers to an ensemble singing in unison with everyone sounding the same pitch or octave at the same time

**motet**

a polyphonic choral composition based on sacred texts

**motive**

a short musical idea that is easily remembered and helps unify a composition

**movement**

one part of a larger composition that is relatively complete and independent, much like one chapter of a novel; symphonies and sonatas are often cast in three or four movements that are contrasted by tempo and meter

**music critic**

a person who judges the quality of a musical performance

**music culture**

the performance practices, means, traditions, uses, and beliefs about music of a group of people, either from a specific time or place

**music director**

the professional responsible for selecting, commissioning, and/or writing a music track

**music drama**

Wagner's term for his operas of the Romantic period

**musical expression**

the feeling a performer brings to music

**musical style**

the distinct manner or character of musical expression

**musique concrète**

a system of electronic composition in which natural sounds are taped, edited, and shaped into a composition recorded on magnetic tape

**national anthem**

a song of praise or devotion to one's country

**natural (♮)**

a mark that cancels out a sharp or a flat

**neume**

a marking over or under the text to signal a change

**New Age**

a contemporary type of meditative, mostly instrumental, music

**New Romanticism**

a musical style that combines tonal melody with exotic textures and timbres

**obligato**

a subordinate melody above the main melody

**octave**

an interval of eight pitch names, such as C to the next C above or below; a distance of twelve half steps

**offbeat**

emphasis of the weak beats in a measure

**opera**

a staged drama that is predominantly sung, most often with orchestral accompaniment

**opera buffa**

comic opera

**opera comique**

a type of opera that uses some spoken dialogue

**opera seria**

a serious form of opera with lofty heroic themes from history and mythology

**operetta**

A stage play with songs and dance interspersed with spoken lines

**opus**

a term designating a musical work or set of works

**oratorio**

a sectional form for soloists, chorus, and orchestra

**orchestration**

the process of scoring for an orchestra

**organum**

an application of part singing in Gregorian chant in which a second melody (vox organalis) was added to the existing plainsong (vox principalis); although its earliest form was parallel organum, it eventually developed into free and melismatic organum; *see also* parallel organum

**ostinato**

a repeated musical figure

**overtone**

a faint tone that is generated when any one tone is sounded.

**overture**

an extended orchestral introduction to an opera, ballet, or similar type of musical presentation

**parallel organum**

a compositional method in which two voice parts sing the same melody, one a perfect fourth or fifth higher than the other.

**partial**

a harmonic generated by a fundamental tone; *see* overtone

**passacaglia**

(pahs-ah-KAL-yeh) continuous variations on a bass melody

**passing tone**

nonharmonic tone that literally moves between two chordal tones

**pathos**

the feeling of sympathetic pity or compassion for a character

**Peking opera**

a Chinese musical art form that combines instruments, speaking, singing, acrobatics, martial arts, and pantomime

**pentatonic scale**

a scale made up of five notes within the octave

**perceptive listening**

the ability to discern musical characteristics and describe them

**percussion**

instruments that derive their sound from being shook or struck, including drums, cymbals, triangles, xylophones, gongs, chimes, and rattles

**perfect cadence**

a conclusive dominant-to-tonic chordal progression marking the end of a musical idea; also called *authentic cadence*

**phrase**

a musical thought—a series of pitches that makes sense

**pianissimo ( *ppp* )**

very soft

**piano ( *p* )**

soft

**pitch**

the highness or lowness of sound determined by its frequency of vibration

**pivot chord**

a chord that is common to two tonalities or keys and is used as the basis of modulating from one to the other

**pizzicato**

playing string instruments by plucking with the fingers rather than bowing

**plainsong**

music with no strict meter or accompaniment, sung by a single voice or unison choir

**polka**

a rapid dance in duple meter

**polychoral music**

music for several groups performing in answer to each other

**polyphonic**

characterizes musical texture with independent melodies that stand alone

**polyrhythmic**

juxtaposing two or more different rhythms

**polyrhythms**

a combination of two or more contrasting rhythmic patterns played at the same time

**popular music**

music intended for a wide audience, featuring prominent melodies

**prepared piano**

the alteration of a traditional piano's timbre by the insertion of various objects among and between the strings, as invented by John Cage

**presto**

very fast; faster than allegro

**prima donna**

the principal female singer in an opera; a feisty, conceited opera star

**primary chord**

harmony built on the first (DO), the fourth (FA), and the fifth (SOL) degrees of the scale

**program music**

instrumental compositions that attempt to convey a specific idea without using lyrics

**program symphony**

a pictorial or descriptive orchestral work in several movements

**prosody**

musical qualities of language

**protest music**

a powerful musical genre directed at social injustices and the desire for change

**protocol**

a set of rules governing diplomatic or state etiquette

**qawwali**

rhythmic, fast-paced music used by groups of Sufi (SOO-fee) Muslims

**quantizing**

a process that corrects and adjusts performed rhythms so that the notes fall precisely on the beat or on even divisions of the beat

**quartet**

a combination of four voices or instruments; also music written for such an ensemble

**quintet**

a combination of five voices or instruments, for example a woodwind quintet; also music for such an ensemble

**raga**

Indian melodic material; a traditional melodic pattern or mode, or the improvisation based on it

**ragtime**

a style of American popular music, often for piano, in which the syncopated melody conflicts with the steady 2/4 or 4/4 rhythm

**range**

the distance between the lowest and highest pitches of the voice

**rap**

an energetic and talky form of accompanied singing that often highlights the harsh realities of urban America

**recapitulation**

the section of a sonata form that is basically a repetition of the exposition (main thematic material)

**recitative**

a way of “speaking musically”; sung conversation between characters to help advance the story line

**refrain**

a chorus (melody and text) that is repeated at intervals in a song, especially following each verse

**reggae**

Jamaican dance music, mixing African and Caribbean rhythms

**register**

the high, middle, or low section of the vocal or instrumental range; vocal range

**remixing**

a technique that creates a new version of a song by adding different material to the original version

**Renaissance**

the period of rediscovered classical ideals of the ancient Greeks that inspired a rebirth and revival of human creativity

**repertoire**

an inventory of compositions mastered and performed by a musician

**Requiem Mass**

part of the Catholic ritual for the dead

**resolution**

in harmonic analysis, the succession of a dissonant sound to a consonant sound

**retrograde**

sounded backward

**retrograde-inversion**

the backward and upside-down sounding of a musical idea

**rumba**

a ballroom dance that imitates the Afro-Cuban rumba; *see also* rumba

**rhythm**

combinations of long and short sounds that convey a sense of movement

**rhythm and blues (R & B)**

a style of American popular music that combines blues harmonies and rhythm with gospel-like vocals in up tempo

**rhythm cycle**

a fixed number of beats in a series that repeats itself over and over, particularly in Arabian and Indian music

**riff**

an ostinato phrase in jazz

**ripieno**

the orchestral sections of a Baroque concerto

**ritardando**

the gradual slowing of tempo; gradually growing slower; abbreviated as rit; also called *ritard*

**ritornello**

a refrain-like repeated section in a Baroque concerto

**rock music**

a popular music style that began in the 1950s with a blending of gospel, rhythm and blues, and country music; also called *rock 'n' roll*

**Romantic music**

music of the nineteenth century that stressed the expression of feeling

**Romantic period**

a period during the nineteenth century and early twentieth century (1825–1900) when composers created music that often exploded with emotion

**rondeau**

a fixed poetic form of the thirteenth century

**rondo**

a composition consisting of a recurring theme alternating with contrasting sections

**root**

the pitch that is the foundation or building block of a chord

**round**

a composition in which the same melody is started at different times and sounded together; also called *canon*

**rubato**

the free treatment of tempo within a musical phrase

**rumba**

an Afro-Cuban popular dance; *see also* rumba

**sacred**

of or dealing with religious music; *see* secular

**salsa**

dance music of Cuban origin that borrows rhythms, harmonies, and improvised elements from American jazz and from Puerto Rican and South American festival music

**samba**

an African-Brazilian dance that is faster and jazzier than the tango

**sampled sounds**

prerecorded bits of sound that are reprocessed

**sampling**

manipulating bits of prerecorded sound to form new sounds

**sarabande**

a seventeenth- and eighteenth-century dance in stately triple meter with an accent on beat two

**scale**

a sequence of tones arranged in rising pitches

**scat singing**

a form of vocal improvisation on nonsense syllables (such as *doo-wah*, *doo-wee*)

**scherzo**

a vigorous and sometimes lighthearted movement in triple meter with a middle section or trio

**score**

the written notation of a composition

**scoring**

composing music expressly for a film

**secular**

music without religious associations; *see* sacred

**seguidilla**

a type of Spanish dance, or the music for such a dance

**sequence**

repetition of a melodic idea or phrase at a higher or lower pitch level

**sequencer**

an electronic system that stores data about music

**serialism**

use of a set sequence of pitches as the basis for a musical composition, such as the ordering of the 12 chromatic tones, which are then transposed, inverted, presented in retrograde, and so on

**sharp (♯)**

a symbol that raises a pitch by one half step

**slogan**

a phrase used repeatedly to convey goals or communicate an important message

**sofège**

(sohl-FEZH) a method of sight reading, using the syllables DO, RE, MI, FA, SOL, LA, TI, DO



**soliloquy**

spoken or sung text that reveals the inner thoughts of a character

**solmization**

method of assigning a syllabic name to each tone of the scale to facilitate memorization

**solo**

composition for one performer

**son jarocho**

(SOHN hah-ROH-choh) a traditional Mexican song

**sonata**

a work in several movements for one or more instruments

**sonata allegro form**

an ABA form composed of three sections: exposition, development, and recapitulation

**song form**

ternary form in ABA

**sonority**

the degree of resonance or blend of sound

**soprano**

the high female register; one who sings in the high soprano register

**soul music**

a form of rhythm and blues

**soundtrack**

a perforated strip along the film's edge containing coded representations of the sound

**source music**

film music that comes from a visual (on-camera) source

**spiritual**

a religious song, particularly of blacks in America's South

**spot**

to determine which scenes should have music

**staccato**

played in a detached manner, as opposed to legato

**staff**

a set of five lines and four spaces on which music is notated

**stanza**

the verse of a text

**stretto**

a polyphonic texture in which the imitating voices overlap, creating a heightened sense of drama

**string quartet**

an ensemble of four stringed instruments including two violins, a viola, and a cello; also music performed by the ensemble

**strophic form**

a form that uses a repetition of the music for each new verse

**style**

the particular character of a musical work, a performance, or a historical period

**subdominant**

fourth pitch of a diatonic scale, as well as the triad built upon that pitch

**subject**

the principal musical idea, synonymous with the theme but usually applied only to the main melody of a fugue

**suite**

a set of instrumental pieces, each in the character of a dance

**swing**

the special rhythmic character that jazz musicians add to the music

**syllabic**

a melodic setting in which each syllable of text is sung to one pitch

**symbolism**

the use of one idea to represent or stand for another

**symphonic poem**

a piece of orchestral program music in one long movement; also called a *tone poem*

**symphony**

an extended work for orchestra with several contrasting movements

**syncopation**

deliberate shifts of accent so that it conflicts with the steady beat

**synthesizer**

an electronic device, usually with a keyboard, capable of producing sounds in almost any range, tone quality, and volume

**tala**

(TAH-lah) an Indian time cycle

**tango**

a Latin American dance performed at a moderately slow, walk-like tempo in 4/4 meter

**tap dancing**

a step dance in which foot movements produce audible rhythms emphasized by small metal plates on the soles of the dancer's shoes

**technique**

the ability to perform an instrument or sing music in tune and in proper rhythm

**telharmonium**

a machine that used electrical current to produce musical sounds played on a keyboard and sent through telephone lines

**tempo**

the pace with which music moves

**tenor**

the high male range, with a powerful, ringing quality

**ternary**

a three-part form, such as ABA

**terraced dynamics**

layered dynamic levels within a composition

**tessitura**

the general range of a voice part, considering the commonly used pitches, not the lowest and highest extremes

**texture**

the way sounds are woven together

**theme and variations**

a musical form in which a melodic idea is stated then varied in a succession of statements

**theremin**

an electronic musical instrument with two projecting electrodes, one that controls pitch and the other, volume

**through composed**

a composition form in which each emotional idea is represented by its unique music

**timbre**

the distinct tonal quality of an instrument or voice, which is clearly identifiable by the ear

**time line**

a basic rhythm pattern that serves as a foundation for more complex patterns in other parts

**tintal**

a popular 16-beat rhythmic cycle in the music of India

**toccata**

keyboard piece (usually) that displays the performer's manual dexterity, typically in one movement

**tonality**

the quality of a system of pitches

**tone poem**

a type of program music written for textual materials including stories or plays

**tone row**

a series of notes comprising the 12 pitches of the chromatic scale

**tonic**

first pitch of a diatonic scale or the triad built on such a pitch

**traditional music**

informal music that develops within and is strongly associated with a cultural group or region

**transcription**

an arrangement of music transferred from one medium to another

**transpose**

to move a whole piece, a section of a piece, or a twelve-tone series from one pitch level to another

**treble clef** (♩)

a sign on a staff indicating the tone G above middle C

**tremolo**

an effect found in string or keyboard music that involves the quick repetition of one or two pitches; in singing it refers to excessive use of vibrato

**triad**

a chord of three tones consisting of a root, a third, and a fifth

**trio**

a work or movement for three voices or instruments

**triolet**

three notes performed in the time of two

**troubadour**

a minstrel of noble birth in southern France, Spain, and Italy during the eleventh to thirteenth centuries; *see also* *trouvère*

**trouvère**

a minstrel in northern France during the Middle Ages; *see also* *troubadour*

**tutti**

a section of a concerto in which all the instruments and/or voices perform together

**twelve-bar blues**

jazz form based on three phrases of four measures each in 4/4 time, using a set of progression of I, IV, and V chords, often with added 7ths

**twelve-tone music**

twentieth-century system of writing music in which the twelve tones of the chromatic scale are arranged into a series (numbers 1 to 12), and subsequently used as the basis of melodic and harmonic variation

**upbeat**

a weak beat preceding the downbeat

**urbanization**

the development of a culture that is the result of the crowded intensity of a city lifestyle

**vaudeville**

an early staged variety show that included songs, dances, and comedy skits

**verismo**

a style of Italian opera with realistic portrayals of everyday life

**verse**

a line of metrical writing or a stanza

**vibrato**

a slight wavering or pulsating of a tone in singing or playing an instrument

**virtuoso**

a performer with brilliant, flawless technique

**visualization**

the process of enhancing material that is heard by adding information that is seen

**vocal range**

the span from the highest to the lowest pitch a person can sing

**vocal register**

how high or low someone speaks

**waltz**

a dance in triple meter, made famous in Vienna in the late 1800s

**whole-step**

distance of two half steps in the same direction, such as between C and D or E and F sharp

**whole-tone scale**

scale in which all intervals are whole steps, such as C, D, E, F<sup>♯</sup>, G<sup>♯</sup>, A<sup>♯</sup>, and C

**word painting**

music that portrays the meaning of the words of the text

**zydeco**

the music of black Creoles that originated in south Louisiana

## Strand I

### Music Making

A complete music-making experience includes opportunities for:

- Hands-on and interactive learning
- Self-expression
- Reflection

Abramson, Robert. *Rhythm Games 2: Music and Movement - Games for Coordination, Concentration, and Cooperation*. Music and Movement Press, 1994.

Abramson, Robert, and Joseph Reiser. *Music as a Second Language: An integrated approach through physical movement to ear-training, sight singing, dictation, and musical performance*. Music and Movement Press, 1994.

Andress, Barbara. *Music for Young Children*. Harcourt Brace College Publishers, 1998.

All-State Performance Application Process: New York State School Music Association  
www.nyssma.org/students.cfm

ARTSEEDGE: Standards  
http://artsedge.kennedy-center.org/teach/standards.cfm

Battisti, Frank. *The Winds of Change: The Evolution of the Contemporary American Wind Band/Ensemble and Its Conductor*. Meredith Music Publications, 2002.

Bernstein, Leonard. *The Joy of Music*. Simon and Schuster, 1959. Reprint, New York: Anchor Books, 1994.

Boonshaft, Peter Loel. *Teaching Music with Purpose: Conducting, Rehearsing and Inspiring*. Meredith Music Publications, 2002.

Brass Methods Class Resources  
http://facstaff.unca.edu/dwilken/brass\_methods\_resources.html

Bruser, Madeline. *The Art of Practicing: A Guide to Making Music from the Heart*. Bell Tower, 1997.

Burton, Leon, and Takeo Kudo. *SoundPlay: Understanding Music through Creative Movement*. MENC, 2000.

Choksy, Lois. *The Kodály Method*. 2d ed. Prentice Hall, 1988.

ChoralNet, Inc. - The Internet Center for Choral Music.  
www.choralnet.org

Cooper, Lynn. *Teaching Band and Orchestra: Methods and Materials*. GIA Publications, Inc., 2004.

Copyright Information and Resources  
www.menc.org/information/copyright.html

Creating a Culture of Student Reflection  
www.edutopia.org/creating-culture-student-reflection

Daniel, Katinka, and Mark Foster. *Kodály in Kindergarten*. Publisher Division of Shawnee Press, 1981.

Dubsky, Dora. *Storytelling Through Movement and Dance*. Oak Leaf Press, 1993.

Froseth, James O., Albert Blaser, and Phyllis Weikart. *Music for Movement*. GIA Publications, Inc., 2008.

GoCityKids New York City | Summer Camps  
http://gocitykids.parentsconnect.com

Grunow, Richard F., Edwin E. Gordon, Christopher D. Azzara, and Michael E. Martin. (1999-2002). *Jump Right In: The instrumental series, for band, strings, and recorder*. GIA Publications, Inc., 1999.

Heiks, James, ed. *Alice Parker's Hand-Me-Down Songs*. GIA Publications, Inc., 2008.

IFCM - International Federation for Choral Music  
www.ifcm.net

Liebman, David. *Developing a Personal Saxophone Sound*. Caris Music Services, 1994.

Making Music  
www.sbgmusic.com

McPherson, Gary, ed. *The Child As Musician: A Handbook of Musical Development*. Oxford University Press, 2006.

Mead, Virginia Hoge. *Dalcroze Eurhythmics in Today's Music Classroom*. Schott Music, 1994.

MENC Presents Rules for Concert Etiquette  
www.menc.org/guides/etiquette/etiquette\_home

Moriarty, John. *Diction: A Guide for American Singers*. E. C. Schirmer Music Company, 1975.

New York Summer Music Camps and Summer Programs  
www.summeroncampus.com

NoiseBox: Audience Police Academy.  
http://noisebox.net/audiencepolice/academy.htm

Orff, Carl, and Gunild Keetman. *Orff-Schulwerk: Music for Children*. 5 vols. Edited and translated by Margaret Murray. Schott Music Corp., 1982.

Starting a High School Chamber Music Group  
JSTOR/MENC  
http://links.jstor.org/sici?sici=0027-4321(200005)86%3A6%3C23%3A-AHSCM%3E2.0.CO%3B2-S

String Instruments and Pitch  
http://artsedge.kennedy-center.org/content/3345/

Stringed instruments: Playing positions  
www.britannica.com/eb/article-53729/stringed-instrument

Summer Music Programs  
www.excel-ability.com/Music/Programs/SummerPrograms

Traugh, Steven. *Music and Movement in the Classroom*. Creative Teaching Press, 2000.

Wall, Joan. *International Phonetic Alphabet for Singers: A Manual for English and Foreign Language Diction*. Dallas: PST... Inc., 1989.

Ware, Clifton. *Basics of Vocal Pedagogy: The Foundations and Process of Singing*. The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc., 1998.

Westney, William. *The Perfect Wrong Note: Learning to Trust Your Musical Self*. Amadeus Press, 2003.

Williamson, Aaron, ed. *Musical Excellence: Strategies and Techniques to Enhance Performance*. Oxford University Press, 2004.

## Strand II

### Music Literacy

A complete education in music develops the ability to use and understand the language of music through:

- Listening and responding to live and recorded repertoire
- Notation, recording, and music technology
- Description, analysis, and evaluation

A Jazz History

[www.pbskids.org/jazz/lesson/jazz\\_history](http://www.pbskids.org/jazz/lesson/jazz_history)

Apicella, Anthony, Attilio J. Giampa, and Margarita Apicella. *Simplicity in Music Appreciation*. Parker, 1974.

Appignanesi, Lisa. *The Cabaret*. Yale University Press, 2004.

Babatunde Olatunji at All About Jazz

[www.allaboutjazz.com/php/musician.php?id=9964](http://www.allaboutjazz.com/php/musician.php?id=9964)

BBC - Music - Listen /Genre

[www.bbc.co.uk/music/listen](http://www.bbc.co.uk/music/listen)

Benade, Arthur H. *Horns, Strings, and Harmony*. Dover, 1992.

Bernstein, Leonard. *Young People's Concerts*. New York Philharmonic (1961). DVD. Kultur Video, 2004.

Bernstein, Martin. *An Introduction to Music*. Kessinger Publishing, 2005.

Bradley, Ian. *Oh Joy! Oh Rapture!: The Enduring Phenomenon of Gilbert and Sullivan*. Oxford University Press, 2005.

Broadway Musicals Radio

[www.AccuBroadway.com](http://www.AccuBroadway.com)

Campbell, Patricia Shehan, and Bonnie C. Wade. *Teaching Music Globally: Experiencing Music, Expressing Culture*. Oxford University Press, USA, 2004.

Citron, Stephen. *Stephen Sondheim and Andrew Lloyd Webber: The New Musical*. Oxford University Press, 2001.

Copland, Aaron, and Alan Rich (forward). *What to Listen for in Music*. Reprint of 1957 ed. Signet Classics, 2002.

Employing Music in the Cause of Social Justice: Ruth Crawford Seeger  
[www.nyfolklore.org/pubs/voic31-1-2/socjust1.html](http://www.nyfolklore.org/pubs/voic31-1-2/socjust1.html)

Everett, Walter. *The Beatles As Musicians: Revolver through the Anthology*. Oxford University Press, 1999.

Fuller, Albert. *Alice Tully: An Intimate Portrait*. University of Illinois Press, 1999.

Ganeri, Anita, and Nicola Barber. *The Young Person's Guide to the Opera*. In association with the Royal Opera House and the San Diego Opera. Harcourt Children's Books, 2001.

Geras, Adele. *The Random House Book of Opera Stories*. Random House, 1997.

Gordon, Edwin, E. *Jump Right In: The Music Curriculum Reference Handbook for Using Learning Sequence Activities*. GIA Publications, Inc., 2001.

Hamilton, Kenneth. *After the Golden Age: Romantic Pianism and Modern Performance*. Oxford University Press, 2007.

Hoffer, Charles. *Music Listening Today*. 3d ed. Wadsworth, 2006.

In The First Person: Steve Reich

[www.newmusicbox.org/archive/firstperson/reich/bio](http://www.newmusicbox.org/archive/firstperson/reich/bio)

Kamien, Roger. *Music: An Appreciation*. McGraw Hill Humanities, 2007.

Kerman, Joseph, and Gary Tomilson. *Listen*. 4th ed. Bedford/St. Martin's, 1999.

Light, Alan, ed. *The Vibe History of Hip Hop*. Three Rivers Press, 1999.

Martin, Henry, and Keith Waters. *Jazz: The First 100 Years*. Schirmer, 2005.

Mender, Mona. *Extraordinary Women in Support of Music*. Scarecrow Press, 1997.

Monzon, Ricardo. *Basic Afro-Cuban Rhythms*. DVD. Berklee Music Online School, 2007.

Nathan, Amy. *The Young Musician's Survival Guide: Tips from Teens & Pros*. Oxford University Press, 2000.

National Geographic World Music

<http://worldmusic.nationalgeographic.com>

National String Repair Clinics

[www.dcs.wisc.edu/lisa/music/nsw](http://www.dcs.wisc.edu/lisa/music/nsw)

NPR Music: Kool Herc: A Founding Father of Hip Hop

[www.npr.org/templates/story/story.php?storyId=4567450](http://www.npr.org/templates/story/story.php?storyId=4567450)

Pandora Radio - Free

[www.pandora.com](http://www.pandora.com)

Parker, Alice. *Anatomy of Melody: Exploring the Single Line of Song*. GIA Publications, Inc., 2007.

Paolucci, Bridget. *Beverly Sills: Opera Singer*. Chelsea House, 1989.

PBS - Jazz, a Film by Ken Burns: Biographies

[www.pbs.org/jazz/biography](http://www.pbs.org/jazz/biography)

Pipe Organs and Music

[www.orgel.com](http://www.orgel.com)

Pogue, David, and Scott Speck. *Classical Music for Dummies*. Wiley, 1997.

The President's Own Marine Band

[www.marineband.usmc](http://www.marineband.usmc)

Professional Band Instrument Repair Technician Resource Site

[www.probird.com](http://www.probird.com)

Recording and Producing for Guitarists

[www.berkleemusic.com/school/course](http://www.berkleemusic.com/school/course)

Rock and Roll Hall of Fame/Education

[www.rockhall.com/events](http://www.rockhall.com/events)

Rosenthal, Harold, and John Warrack. *Concise Oxford Dictionary of Opera*. 2d ed. Oxford University Press, 1979.

Saint Paul Sunday from American Public Media

<http://saintpaulsunday.publicradio.org/>

Satchmo: The Official Site of the Louis Armstrong House

[www.satchmo.net/bio/](http://www.satchmo.net/bio/)

The School Music Program: A New Vision

[www.menc.org/publication/books/prek12st.html](http://www.menc.org/publication/books/prek12st.html)

Science of Music: Exploratorium's Accidental Scientist

[www.exploratorium.edu/music/](http://www.exploratorium.edu/music/)

Shawcross, Nancy M, curator. *Marion Anderson: A Life In Song*. Penn Library Exhibitions.

[www.library.upenn.edu/exhibits/rbm/anderson](http://www.library.upenn.edu/exhibits/rbm/anderson)

Steinberg, Michael. *The Concerto: A Listener's Guide*. Oxford University Press, 1998.

Thomas Hampson: I Hear America Singing

[www.pbs.org/wnet/ihas](http://www.pbs.org/wnet/ihas)

TubaNews  
www.tubanews.com  
Villamil, Victoria Etnier. *A Singer's Guide to the American Art Song: 1870–1980*. Scarecrow Press, Inc., 1993.

Voice Academy  
www.uiowa.edu/~shcvoice/

Wade, Bonnie C. *Thinking Musically: Experiencing Music, Expressing Culture*. Oxford University Press, USA, 2003.

WWW Sites for Musicologists  
www.ams-net.org/musicology\_www.php

Yudkin, Jeremy. *Understanding Music*. 5th ed. Prentice Hall, 2007.

### Strand III

#### Making Connections

A complete musical experience is enriched by *making connections*:

- Recognizing parallels between music and other disciplines
- Gaining an understanding of the cultural and historical context of music
- Exploring personal connections with music

Agay, Denes. *Best Loved Songs of the American People*. Illustrated by Lonette Reisie. New York: Doubleday Inc., 1975.

The Arts and Social Justice  
www.brandeis.edu/the\_arts/justice.html

Azzara, Christopher D., and Richard F. Grunow. *Developing musicianship through audiation*. GIA Publications, Inc., 2006.

Balk, H. Wesley. *The Complete Singer-Actor*. University of Minnesota Press, 1977.

Bluestine, Eric. *The Ways Children Learn Music*. GIA Publications, Inc., 2008.

Burnaford, Gail A., Arnold Aprill, and Cynthia Weiss, eds. *Renaissance in the Classroom: Arts Integration and Meaningful Learning*. Lawrence Erlbaum Associates, Inc., 2001.

Bruner, Jerome. *Child's Talk: Learning to Use Language*. New York: W. W. Norton & Co., 1983.

Chapman, Nigel, and Jerry Chapman. *Digital Media Tools*. 2d ed. Wiley, 2003.

Cheng, Stephen Chun-Tao. *The Tao of Voice: A New East-West Approach to Transforming the Singing and Speaking Voice*. Destiny Books, 1991.

Chusid, Irwin. *Songs in the Key of Z: The Curious World of Outsider Music*. Chicago Review Press, 2000.

Jordan, James, and Eugene Migliaro Corporon. *The Anatomy of Conducting: Architecture & Essentials, Choral & Instrumental*. DVD. GIA Publications, Inc., 2008.

Hoffer, Charles. *Music Listening Today*. 3d ed. Wadsworth, 2006.

Kamien, Roger. *Music: An Appreciation*. McGraw Hill Humanities, 2007.

Kempter, Susan. *How Muscles Learn: Teaching the Violin with the Body in Mind*. Summy-Birchard Music, 2003.

Learning Through Listening: Benefits of Teaching Listening  
www.learningthroughlistening.org

Levitin, Daniel J. *This Is Your Brain on Music: The Science of a Human Obsession*. Dutton Adult, 2006.

Martin, Henry, and Keith Waters. *Jazz: The First 100 Years*. Schirmer, 2005.

Nettl, Bruno, et al (eds.). *Excursions in World Music*. 4th ed. Pearson Prentice Hall, 2004.

Patel, Aniruddh D. *Music, Language, and the Brain*. Oxford University Press, 2007.

Qualey, Marsha. *Yankee Doodle: A Song From The American Revolution*. Edited by Ann Owen. Illustrated by Todd Ouren. Picture Window Books, 2003.

Roehmann, Franz L., and Frank R. Wilson, eds. *Music and Child Development: The Biology of Music Making*. MMB Music, 1990.

Stoehr, Judy, June Hinkley, Darla S. Hanley, and Carolyn Minear. *Music Expressions: Music For National Pride*. Warner Bros. Publications, 2003.

*Teaching American History with Favorite Folk Songs: 12 Songs on CD, Song Sheets and Activities*. Scholastic Inc., 2001.

Titon, Jeff Todd, et al. *Worlds of Music: An Introduction to the Music of the World's People*. 2d ed. Schirmer, 2004.

Van Manen, Max. *The Tact of Teaching: The Meaning of Pedagogical Thoughtfulness*. The Althouse Press, 1991.

Van Manen, Max. *The Tone of Teaching*. The Althouse Press, 2002.

Voices on the Radio: New York Traditions.  
www.nyfolklore.org/progs/radiodoc.html

Vygotsky, L. S. *Mind in Society: Development of Higher Psychological Processes*. Edited by Michael Cole, and others. Cambridge, Mass.: Harvard University Press, 1978.

Williams, Linda Verlee. *Teaching For The Two-Sided Mind: A Guide to Right Brain/Left Brain Education*. Simon & Schuster, Inc., 1983.



Yudkin, Jeremy. *Understanding Music*. 5th ed. Prentice Hall, 2007.

Zinsser, William. *Easy to Remember: The Great American Songwriters and Their Songs*. David R. Godine, 2006.

## Strand IV

### Community and Cultural Resources

A complete musical education includes establishing relationships among:

- The classroom
- New York City
- The global cultural community

Alliance for the Arts  
[www.allianceforarts.org](http://www.allianceforarts.org)

Americans for the Arts  
[www.artsusa.org](http://www.artsusa.org)

AMC - American Music Conference  
[www.amc-music.com](http://www.amc-music.com)

The Annenberg Challenge  
[www.aisr.brown.edu/work\\_challenge.html](http://www.aisr.brown.edu/work_challenge.html)

ArtsEdNet - Getty Education Institute for the Arts  
[www.artsednet.getty.edu](http://www.artsednet.getty.edu)

Arts Education Partnership  
[www.aep-arts.org](http://www.aep-arts.org)

Band & Orchestra Resources K-12 for Music Educators  
[www.isd77.k12.mn.us/music/k-12music](http://www.isd77.k12.mn.us/music/k-12music)

ChoralNet, Inc. - The Internet Center for Choral Music.  
[www.choralnet.org/resources](http://www.choralnet.org/resources)

ArtsWire - New York Foundation for the Arts  
[www.artswire.org](http://www.artswire.org)

ArtsTechnoGrants.com and TechnoGrants.com - Funding \$ourcebook  
[www.technogrants.com](http://www.technogrants.com)

Association for Supervision and Curriculum Development - Interactive courses, Web-based training for teachers and administrators  
[www.ascd.org](http://www.ascd.org)

BBC Schools Online  
[www.bbc.co.uk/education/schools/](http://www.bbc.co.uk/education/schools/)

California State PTA Online  
<http://capta.org>

Center for Arts Education  
[www.cae-nyc.org](http://www.cae-nyc.org)

Central Michigan University Libraries  
<http://www.lib.cmich.edu>

Champions of Change  
[www.artsedge.kennedy-center.org/champions/](http://www.artsedge.kennedy-center.org/champions/)

Chicago Public Schools Professional Development Center  
[www.luc.edu/schools/education/csi.html](http://www.luc.edu/schools/education/csi.html)

Coming Up Taller - Arts and Humanities for Children and Youth at Risk  
[www.cominguptaller.org](http://www.cominguptaller.org)

Council of Chief State School Officers - State Education Accountability Systems  
[www.ccsso.org/introprofile.html](http://www.ccsso.org/introprofile.html)

Creative Educational Systems  
[www.creativeeducationalsystems.com](http://www.creativeeducationalsystems.com)

Cultural Funding: Federal Opportunities  
[www.arts.gov/federal.html](http://www.arts.gov/federal.html)

Education Policy Institute  
[www.educationpolicy.org](http://www.educationpolicy.org)

The Educational Alliance Art School  
[www.edalliance.org](http://www.edalliance.org)

Electronic Library - Search a Fabulous Archive of Periodicals  
[www.elibrary.com](http://www.elibrary.com)

Empire State Partnership Project (ESP)  
[www.espartsed.org](http://www.espartsed.org)

Foundation Center - Links Nonprofit Resources by Program Area  
[www.fdncenter.org/onlib](http://www.fdncenter.org/onlib)

Futures Channel  
[www.futureschannel.com](http://www.futureschannel.com)

The George Lucas Educational Foundation (GLEF)  
[www.glef.org](http://www.glef.org)

Green Map System - Mapping of Green, Cultural, and Special Places - Project in NYC Schools  
[www.greenmap.com](http://www.greenmap.com)

James Spinelli Arts Links  
[www.artgp.com](http://www.artgp.com)

The Kennedy Center - Arts Edge  
[www.artsedge.kennedy-center.org/artsedge.html](http://www.artsedge.kennedy-center.org/artsedge.html)

Library of Congress National Digital Library American Memory Collections  
[www.loc.gov](http://www.loc.gov)

London Education Arts Partnership  
[www.londonartsed.org.uk](http://www.londonartsed.org.uk)

Martin, Henry, and Keith Waters. *Jazz: The First 100 Years*. Schirmer, 2005.

MENC - National Association of Music Education  
[www.menc.org](http://www.menc.org)

Mr. Holland's Opus Foundation  
[www.mhopus.org](http://www.mhopus.org)

Musica International Database of Choral Music  
<http://musicanet.org>

National Art Education Association  
[www.naea-reston.org](http://www.naea-reston.org)

National Assembly of State Arts Agencies  
[www.nasaa-arts.org](http://www.nasaa-arts.org)

National Awards Program for Model Professional Development  
[www.ed.gov/offices/OERI/ORAD/profdev.html](http://www.ed.gov/offices/OERI/ORAD/profdev.html)

National Board for Professional Teaching Standards  
[www.nbpts.org](http://www.nbpts.org)

National Center for Voice and Speech  
[www.ncvs.org](http://www.ncvs.org)

National Commission on Teaching & America's Future  
<http://tc.columbia.edu/~teachcomm/>

National Council for Teacher Accreditation - Standards available to download  
[www.ncate.org/](http://www.ncate.org/)

National Endowment for Arts (NEA)  
[www.arts.gov](http://www.arts.gov)

National Endowment for the Humanities (NEH)  
[www.neh.gov](http://www.neh.gov)

National Guild of Community Schools of the Arts  
[www.nationalguild.org](http://www.nationalguild.org)

National Staff Development Council  
[www.nsd.c.org/](http://www.nsd.c.org/)

New York City Arts in Education Roundtable  
[www.nycaieroundtable.org](http://www.nycaieroundtable.org)

The New York Folklore Society  
[www.nyfolklore.org](http://www.nyfolklore.org)

New York Foundation for the Arts - NYFA publishes *Chalkboard*, a biannual for and about arts and education, and *FYI*, a quarterly of practical information for artists.  
[www.nyfa.org](http://www.nyfa.org)

New York State Council on the Arts (NYSCA)  
[www.nysca.org](http://www.nysca.org)

New York State Art Teachers Association  
[www.nysata.org](http://www.nysata.org)

New Visions for Public Schools  
[www.newvisions.org](http://www.newvisions.org)

Northeast & Islands Regional Educational Alliance at Brown University  
[www.lab.brown.edu/](http://www.lab.brown.edu/)

NYC Kids Arts Online - Alliance For the Arts (Kids Culture Calendar & Kids Culture Catalog)  
[www.nyckidsarts.org](http://www.nyckidsarts.org)

NYC Transit - Subway Lines and Schedules  
[www.mta.nyc.ny.us/nyc/service/](http://www.mta.nyc.ny.us/nyc/service/)

New York City Department of Cultural Affairs  
[www.nyc.gov/html/dcla/home.html](http://www.nyc.gov/html/dcla/home.html)

New York State Alliance for Arts Education  
<http://www.nysaae.org>

New York State Summer School of the Arts - Application and audition information  
[www.emsc.nysed.gov/nysssa/](http://www.emsc.nysed.gov/nysssa/)

Performance Library Database  
[www.trilute.com](http://www.trilute.com)

Preparing Tomorrow's Teachers to Use Technology - Grants  
[www.ed.gov/teachtech](http://www.ed.gov/teachtech)

President's Committee on the Arts and the Humanities  
[www.pcah.gov](http://www.pcah.gov)

Resources for Teachers: Unit Plans, Lesson Plans, Rubrics  
[www.taskstream.com](http://www.taskstream.com).

Teachers College - Columbia University  
[www.tc.columbia.edu](http://www.tc.columbia.edu)

The Tech Museum of Innovation  
[www.thetech.org](http://www.thetech.org)

Teaching Matters  
[www.tminet.org](http://www.tminet.org)

Titon, Jeff Todd, et al. *Worlds of Music: An Introduction to the Music of the World's People*. 2d ed. Schirmer, 2004.

United Federation of Teachers  
[www.uft.org](http://www.uft.org)

U.S. Department of Education  
[www.ed.gov](http://www.ed.gov)

World Of Expression - Scholarships for High School Seniors  
[www.worldofexpression.org](http://www.worldofexpression.org)

Zinsser, William. *Easy to Remember: The Great American Songwriters and Their Songs*. David R. Godine, 2006.

## Web Resources for Grant Writing and Fundraising

Distance Education Clearinghouse  
[www.uwex.edu/disted/home.html](http://www.uwex.edu/disted/home.html)

Foundation Center  
[www.fdncenter.org](http://www.fdncenter.org)

Federal Resources for Educational Excellence (FREE)  
[www.ed.gov](http://www.ed.gov)

The Gateway to Educational Materials (GEM)  
[www.thegateway.org](http://www.thegateway.org)

GPO Access  
[www.gpo.gov](http://www.gpo.gov)

*Grants Action News* is available on the Assemble Web page.  
[www.assembly.state.ny.us](http://www.assembly.state.ny.us)

The Grantsmanship Center  
[www.tgci.com](http://www.tgci.com)

Mr. Holland's Opus Foundation  
[www.mhopus.org](http://www.mhopus.org)

National Art Education Foundation  
[www.naea-reston.org](http://www.naea-reston.org)

ScienceWise Alert  
[www.sciencewise.com](http://www.sciencewise.com)

Technogrants  
[www.technogrants.com](http://www.technogrants.com)

U.S. Department of Education  
[www.ed.gov](http://www.ed.gov)

World Of Expression - Scholarships for High School Seniors  
[www.worldofexpression.org](http://www.worldofexpression.org)

## **Funding Sources for Computers and Internet Access**

American School Directory  
[www.asd.com](http://www.asd.com)

Annenberg/CPB  
[www.learner.org](http://www.learner.org)

AOL Foundation  
[www.aolfoundation.org](http://www.aolfoundation.org)

Arthur Vining Davis Foundations  
[www.jvm.com/davis](http://www.jvm.com/davis)

Asante Technologies, Inc.  
[www.asante.com](http://www.asante.com)

CompuServe  
[www.CompuServe.com](http://www.CompuServe.com)

Joy2 Learn  
<http://joy2learn.org/>

Paul G. Allen Virtual Education Foundation  
[www.paulallen.com/foundations](http://www.paulallen.com/foundations)

The P. Buckley Moss Foundation for Children's Education  
[www.mossfoundation.org](http://www.mossfoundation.org)

Tech4Learning  
[www.tech4learning.com](http://www.tech4learning.com)

## **Arts Advocacy/Funding**

Americans for the Arts  
[www.americansforthearts.org](http://www.americansforthearts.org)

New York State Council on the Arts  
[www.nysca.org](http://www.nysca.org)

The New York State Foundation for the Arts  
[www.nyfa.org](http://www.nyfa.org)

The New York State Theatre Education Association (NYSTEA)  
[www.nystea.org](http://www.nystea.org)

## *Strand V*

### **Careers and Lifelong Learning**

A complete musical education will result in a lifelong relationship with music in one or all of the following capacities:

- Professional
- Avocational
- Consumer-related

ACDA - American Choral Directors Association  
[www.acdaonline.org](http://www.acdaonline.org)

AEA - Actors Equity Association  
[www.actorsequity.org](http://www.actorsequity.org)

AES - Audio Engineering Society  
[www.aes.org](http://www.aes.org)

AFM - American Federation of Musicians  
[www.afm.org](http://www.afm.org)

AFT - American Federation of Teachers  
[www.aft.org](http://www.aft.org)

AGMA - American Guild of Musical Artists  
[www.agma.org](http://www.agma.org)

AGO - American Guild of Organists  
[www.agohq.org](http://www.agohq.org)

AMTA - American Music Therapy Association  
[www.musictherapy.org](http://www.musictherapy.org)

ASMC - American Society of Music Copyists  
[www.businessfinance.com/american-society-of-music-copyists.htm](http://www.businessfinance.com/american-society-of-music-copyists.htm)

ASCAP - American Society of Composers, Authors and Publishers  
[www.ascap.com](http://www.ascap.com)

ASMAC - American Society of Music Arrangers and Composers  
[www.asmac.org](http://www.asmac.org)

ASTA - American String Teacher's Association  
[www.astaweb.com](http://www.astaweb.com)

ATA - Association of Teaching Artists  
[www.teachingartists.com](http://www.teachingartists.com)

GCNA - The Guild of Carillonners in North America  
[www.gcna.org](http://www.gcna.org)

IAJE - International Association of Jazz Educators  
[www.iaje.org](http://www.iaje.org)

ITG - International Trumpet Guild  
[www.trumpetguild.org](http://www.trumpetguild.org)

KONY - Kodály Organization of NY  
<http://kony.oake.org>

MEANYC - Music Educator's Association of NYC  
[www.meanyc.org](http://www.meanyc.org)

MENC - National Association of Music Education  
[www.menc.org](http://www.menc.org)

MVPA - Music Video Production Association  
[www.Mvpa.Com](http://www.Mvpa.Com)

NATS - National Association of Teachers of Singing  
[www.nats.org](http://www.nats.org)

NCSME - National Council of Supervisors of Music Education  
[www.menc.org/ncsme/](http://www.menc.org/ncsme/)

NMPA - National Music Publishers' Association  
[www.NMPA.org](http://www.NMPA.org)

NYSBDA - New York State Band Directors Association  
[www.nysbda.org](http://www.nysbda.org)

NYSSMA - New York State School Music Association  
[www.nyssma.org](http://www.nyssma.org)

PTG - Piano Technicians Guild  
[www.ptg.org](http://www.ptg.org)

SGA - Songwriters Guild of America  
[www.songwritersguild.com](http://www.songwritersguild.com)

SMTE - Society for Music Teacher Education  
<http://smte.us>

SRME - Society for Research in Music Education  
[www.menc.org/research.html](http://www.menc.org/research.html)

SSDC - Society of Stage Directors and Choreographers  
[www.ssdcc.org](http://www.ssdcc.org)

UFT - United Federation of Teachers - New York City Affiliate of the American Federation of Teachers  
[www.uft.org](http://www.uft.org)

Zinsser, William. *Easy to Remember: The Great American Songwriters and Their Songs*. David R. Godine, 2006.



**Office of Arts and Special Projects**  
**New York City Department of Education**

52 Chambers Street, Room 210

New York, New York 10007

Phone: 212.374.0300

Fax: 212.374.5598

Email: [artsandspecialprojects@schools.nyc.gov](mailto:artsandspecialprojects@schools.nyc.gov)

website: [schools.nyc.gov/artseducation](http://schools.nyc.gov/artseducation)